



tense



comparative



Aa



noun



# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### PRACTICE BOOK

### ENGLISH GRAMMAR GUIDE



conditional



negative



verb



3,000 GRAMMAR QUESTIONS TO HELP YOU LEARN AND PRACTISE ENGLISH

## Author

---

**Tom Booth** worked for 10 years as an English-language teacher in Poland and Russia. He now lives in England, where he works as an editor and English-language materials writer. He has contributed to a number of books in the *English for Everyone* series.

## Consultant

---

**Tim Bowen** has taught English and trained teachers in more than 30 countries worldwide. He is the co-author of works on pronunciation teaching and language-teaching methodology, and author of numerous books for English-language teachers. He is currently a freelance materials writer, editor, and translator. He is a member of the Chartered Institute of Linguists.

# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### PRACTICE BOOK

## ENGLISH GRAMMAR GUIDE



conditional



negative



verb



comparative



Aa



noun





Penguin  
Random  
House

Project Editor Ben Ffrancon Davies

Senior Art Editor Amy Child

Illustration Square Egg

Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa-Gandhi

Jacket Editor Emma Dawson

Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT

Producer, Pre-production Robert Dunn

Producer Jude Crozier

Proofreader Steph Lewis

Managing Editor Christine Stroyan

Managing Art Editor Anna Hall

Publisher Andrew Macintyre

Art Director Karen Self

Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

DK India

Senior Art Editor Chhaya Sajwan

Senior Editor Arani Sinha

Assistant Art Editors Sonali Mahthan, Vidushi Gupta

Editor Nandini Devdutt Tripathy

Assistant Editors Udit Verma, Andrew Korah

Jacket Designer Priyanka Bansal

Jacket Editorial Co-ordinator Priyanka Sharma

Managing Jackets Editor Saloni Singh

Senior Managing Art Editor Arunesh Talapatra

Managing Editor Soma B. Chowdhury

Pre-production Manager Sunil Sharma

Senior DTP Designers Tarun Sharma, Harish Aggarwal

DTP Designer Manish Upreti

The present continuous

First published in Great Britain in 2019

by Dorling Kindersley Limited  
80 Strand, London, WC2R 0UR

MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT ANSWERS

Copyright © 2019 Dorling Kindersley Limited

A Penguin Random House Company

2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3 1

001-314180-June/2019

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN: 978-0-2413-7975-2

Printed in China

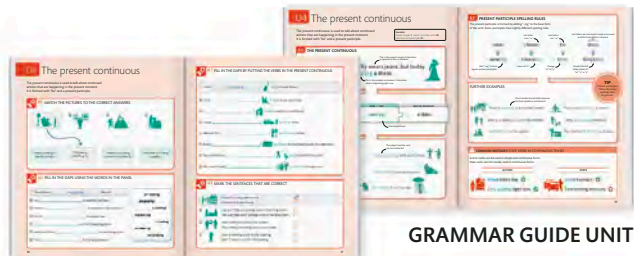
All images © Dorling Kindersley Limited  
For further information see: [www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)

A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# How to use this book

This practice book is a companion to the *English for Everyone: English Grammar Guide*. Each unit in the book tests the language taught in the *English Grammar Guide* unit with the same number.



GRAMMAR GUIDE UNIT

PRACTICE BOOK UNIT

## EXERCISES

The exercises are carefully graded to drill and test the grammar presented in the corresponding *Grammar Guide* unit. Working through these exercises will help you understand and remember what you have learned.

### Exercise number

Every exercise has a unique number so you can easily find the relevant answers.

**Exercise instruction** A brief instruction tells you what you need to do.

### Sample answer

The first question of each exercise is answered to make the task easier to understand.

4.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Simon is working (work) to work today.

Clara isn't trying (try) on some new shoes.

I am writing (write) a letter to my girlfriend.

Sanjay isn't learning (learn) to drive.

Mei and Tim are getting married (get married) today.

Robin isn't studying (study) for the French exam this afternoon.

Sam and Ashwin are playing (play) baseball at the park.

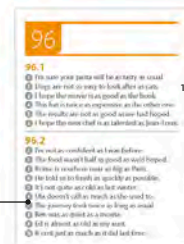
My sister's friend is performing (perform) on stage now.

**Space for writing** You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

**Supporting graphics** Visual cues help you understand the exercises.

## ANSWERS

An Answers section at the back of the book lists the correct answers for every exercise. Turn to these pages whenever you finish a unit or exercise to see how well you have understood the teaching point.



**Exercise numbers** Look for the relevant exercise number in the Answers section to mark your work.



# Contents

01	The present simple	8	20	The future continuous	58
02	The present simple negative	12	21	The future perfect	60
03	Present simple questions	14	22	The future in the past	62
04	The present continuous	16	23	Future review	64
05	Present tenses overview	20	24	The passive	68
06	Imperatives	24	25	The passive in the past	71
07	The past simple	26	26	The passive in the future	74
08	The past simple negative	30	27	The passive with modals	76
09	Past simple questions	32	28	Other passive constructions	78
10	The past continuous	34	29	Conditional sentences	80
11	The present perfect simple	36	30	Other conditional sentences	86
12	The present perfect continuous	40	31	Conditional sentences review	88
13	The past perfect simple	42	32	Future possibilities	90
14	The past perfect continuous	44	33	Wishes and regrets	92
15	"Used to" and "would"	46	34	Forming questions	94
16	Past tenses review	48	35	Question words	98
17	The future with "going to"	52	36	Open questions	100
18	The future with "will"	54	37	Object and subject questions	102
19	The present for future events	56	38	Indirect questions	104
			39	Question tags	106
			40	Short questions	108

41	Short answers	109	62	Possibility	152
42	Questions review	110	63	Articles	154
43	Reported speech	112	64	Articles review	158
44	Tenses in reported speech	114	65	"This / that / these / those"	160
45	Reporting verbs	117	66	"No / none"	162
46	Reported speech with negatives	118	67	"Each / every"	164
47	Reported questions	119	68	"Either / neither / both"	166
48	Reported speech review	122	69	Singular and plural nouns	168
49	Types of verbs	124	70	Countable and uncountable nouns	170
50	Action and state verbs	126	71	Subject-verb agreement	172
51	Infinitives and participles	128	72	Abstract and concrete nouns	174
52	Verb patterns	130	73	Compound nouns	176
53	Verb patterns with objects	133	74	Numbers	178
54	Verb patterns with prepositions	135	75	Quantity	180
55	Phrasal verbs	136	76	Approximate quantity	184
56	Modal verbs	140	77	Personal pronouns	186
57	Ability	142	78	Reflexive pronouns	188
58	Permission, requests, and offers	144	79	Indefinite pronouns	192
59	Suggestions and advice	146	80	Possession	194
60	Obligations	148	81	Defining relative clauses	198
61	Making deductions	150	82	Non-defining relative clauses	200

83	Other relative structures	202	104	"Enough" and "too"	254
84	Question words with "-ever"	204	105	Prepositions	256
85	"There"	206	106	Prepositions of place	258
86	Introductory "it"	209	107	Prepositions of time	260
87	Shifting focus	211	108	Other prepositions	263
88	Inversion	213	109	Dependent prepositions	265
89	Ellipsis	215	110	Coordinating conjunctions	268
90	Shortening infinitives	217	111	Subordinating conjunctions	270
91	Substitution	220	112	More linking words	272
92	Adjectives	222	113	Linking words review	274
93	Gradable and non-gradable adjectives	225	114	Prefixes	276
94	Comparative adjectives	228	115	Suffixes	278
95	Two comparatives together	232	116	Easily confused phrases	280
96	"As... as" comparisons	234	117	Sequencing and organizing	282
97	Superlative adjectives	236	118	Correcting and changing the subject	284
98	Adverbs of manner	240	119	Deciding and hedging	286
99	Comparative and superlative adverbs	242	120	Making conversation	288
100	Adverbs of degree	244			
101	Adverbs of time	247	<b>Answers</b>		<b>290</b>
102	Adverbs of frequency	250			
103	"So" and "such"	252			

# 01 The present simple

The present simple is used to make simple statements of fact, to talk about things that happen repeatedly, and to describe things that are always true.



## 1.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

Jessica walks (walk) around the park every day at lunchtime.

- 1 Tony \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a huge breakfast for his family on Sundays.
- 2 I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) my lunch at 1pm at an Italian restaurant.
- 3 Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) her friends at a café on Thursday evenings.
- 4 We sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis with our friends on Saturday mornings.
- 5 My cousin \_\_\_\_\_ (start) work at 6am every morning.
- 6 The shop assistant \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) work at 6pm in the evening.
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) a lot of coffee every morning.
- 8 Paolo usually \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a book in the evenings.



## 1.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p> Steve usually finishes work at 5pm. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Steve usually finishes work at 5pm. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>4  Jane brushes her hair in the morning. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Jane brushes her hair in the morning. <input type="checkbox"/></p> |
| <p>1  Greg workes in a factory. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Greg works in a factory. <input type="checkbox"/></p>                               | <p>5  Selma gos shopping after work. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Selma goes shopping after work. <input type="checkbox"/></p>              |
| <p>2  My dad watches TV every evening. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>My dad watchs TV every evening. <input type="checkbox"/></p>                 | <p>6  Imran washes his clothes on Sunday. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Imran washs his clothes on Sunday. <input type="checkbox"/></p>      |
| <p>3  Michel plays the piano beautifully. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Michel plays the piano beautifully. <input type="checkbox"/></p>          | <p>7  Mary teaches French at a college. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Mary teaches French at a college. <input type="checkbox"/></p>         |





### 1.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "AM," "IS," OR "ARE"

They are here for the party.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor at the local hospital.
- 2 Vicky \_\_\_\_\_ my eldest child.
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ from a town in Scotland.
- 4 Both my parents \_\_\_\_\_ lawyers.
- 5 You \_\_\_\_\_ a very good friend.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ an American.
- 7 That policeman \_\_\_\_\_ so tall.
- 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-three years old.
- 9 It \_\_\_\_\_ cold outside.
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen today.
- 11 Our cat \_\_\_\_\_ black and white.
- 12 We \_\_\_\_\_ very excited.
- 13 They \_\_\_\_\_ students from France.
- 14 Jim \_\_\_\_\_ an architect.
- 15 My sister-in-law \_\_\_\_\_ from Japan.
- 16 I \_\_\_\_\_ so hungry!
- 17 You \_\_\_\_\_ very lazy.
- 18 My children \_\_\_\_\_ so tired.
- 19 I \_\_\_\_\_ forty-three years old.
- 20 They \_\_\_\_\_ late for work.
- 21 Claudia and Paolo \_\_\_\_\_ Italian.
- 22 My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ retired.
- 23 We \_\_\_\_\_ from Pakistan.
- 24 Paul \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed.



### 1.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "HAVE" OR "HAS"

He has a lot of homework to do.

- 1 Jack \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
- 2 Jennifer \_\_\_\_\_ Abbie's bag.
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful farm.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ three sisters.
- 5 Bob \_\_\_\_\_ toothache.
- 6 My house \_\_\_\_\_ a large garage.
- 7 They \_\_\_\_\_ a new laptop.
- 8 We \_\_\_\_\_ so many books.
- 9 My dad \_\_\_\_\_ red hair.
- 10 You \_\_\_\_\_ an old phone.
- 11 My neighbors \_\_\_\_\_ a daughter.
- 12 Juan's house \_\_\_\_\_ three floors.
- 13 That bird \_\_\_\_\_ big eyes.
- 14 I \_\_\_\_\_ a new baby.
- 15 We both \_\_\_\_\_ headaches.
- 16 They \_\_\_\_\_ the same dress.
- 17 My grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ chickens.
- 18 You \_\_\_\_\_ a friendly cat.
- 19 My town \_\_\_\_\_ two museums.
- 20 Yuko \_\_\_\_\_ a painful back.
- 21 Our dogs \_\_\_\_\_ lots of toys.
- 22 We \_\_\_\_\_ an English class tonight.
- 23 Vineetha \_\_\_\_\_ a new haircut.
- 24 I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at 6pm every day.





## 1.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Hannah takes beautiful photos of the places she visits.

Reggie bakes the most incredible cakes.

Emil leaves the office at 6pm each day.

Brad goes camping in the forest every summer.



## 1.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Katya teaches young children how to read.

1 I \_\_\_\_\_ work at 9am during the week.

2 You \_\_\_\_\_ an engineer.

3 Maria \_\_\_\_\_ coffee with Jules in the morning.

4 They \_\_\_\_\_ to work by train.

5 My dad \_\_\_\_\_ 67 years old.

6 Robert \_\_\_\_\_ work at 7pm.

7 We \_\_\_\_\_ an English lesson later.

8 Paul often \_\_\_\_\_ a film in the evening.

9 Emma \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early on Sundays.

watches                      is                      are                      goes                      have  
go                      start                      has                      finishes                      ~~teaches~~

# 02 The present simple negative

To make negative sentences using "be" in the present simple, "not" is added after the verb. For other verbs, the auxiliary verb "do not" or "does not" is used.



## 2.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

French. not I am

*I am not French.*

4 my not are dogs. They

1 doctor. is She a not

5 are You Egyptian. not

2 are New Zealand. We from not

6 is my This computer. not

3 not My American. is dad

7 engineer. an am I not



## 2.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "DO NOT" OR "DOES NOT"

Michael does not have a dog.

6 My grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ have a car.

1 You \_\_\_\_\_ work in the library.

7 Nico \_\_\_\_\_ work in the factory.

2 He \_\_\_\_\_ eat meat.

8 She \_\_\_\_\_ go to work on Fridays.

3 Val \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV in the evening.

9 I \_\_\_\_\_ go to restaurants very often.

4 I \_\_\_\_\_ play football very often.

10 You \_\_\_\_\_ have a cat.

5 We \_\_\_\_\_ get up early on Saturdays.

11 They \_\_\_\_\_ work outside.



## 2.3 REWRITE EACH SENTENCE IN THE NEGATIVE USING CONTRACTIONS

She is happy with her meal. *She's not happy with her meal.* *She isn't happy with her meal.*

- |   |                          |       |       |
|---|--------------------------|-------|-------|
| 1 | He is a teacher.         | _____ | _____ |
| 2 | Carla is very tall.      | _____ | _____ |
| 3 | You are from Australia.  | _____ | _____ |
| 4 | They are farmers.        | _____ | _____ |
| 5 | We are happy.            | _____ | _____ |
| 6 | You are lawyers.         | _____ | _____ |
| 7 | She is a doctor.         | _____ | _____ |
| 8 | It is very cold outside. | _____ | _____ |



## 2.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
|     | He does not likes baseball. <input type="checkbox"/>           | 6    | Diana doesn't have a computer. <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   | He does not like baseball. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |  | Diana don't has a computer. <input type="checkbox"/>    |
| 1  | I don't like Sam's cooking. <input type="checkbox"/>           | 7   | I don't like cats. <input type="checkbox"/>             |
|   | I no like Sam's cooking. <input type="checkbox"/>              |  | I like not cats. <input type="checkbox"/>               |
| 2  | You doesn't look very happy. <input type="checkbox"/>          | 8   | Paolo does not get up at 6am. <input type="checkbox"/>  |
|   | You don't look very happy. <input type="checkbox"/>            |  | Paolo do not get up at 6am. <input type="checkbox"/>    |
| 3  | Antonio does not live in Madrid. <input type="checkbox"/>      | 9   | My dad don't feels well. <input type="checkbox"/>       |
|   | Antonio do not lives in Madrid. <input type="checkbox"/>       |  | My dad doesn't feel well. <input type="checkbox"/>      |
| 4  | Phil don't drive a car. <input type="checkbox"/>               | 10  | They isn't from China. <input type="checkbox"/>         |
|   | Phil doesn't drive a car. <input type="checkbox"/>             |  | They aren't from China. <input type="checkbox"/>        |
| 5  | I'm not a doctor. <input type="checkbox"/>                     | 11  | My friends don't like chess. <input type="checkbox"/>   |
|   | I amn't a doctor. <input type="checkbox"/>                     |  | My friends doesn't like chess. <input type="checkbox"/> |





## 2.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES IN THE NEGATIVE

This book **is** very interesting.

*This book isn't very interesting.*



1 Amy **works** as a receptionist in our office.



2 I **like** going to the health center.



3 Your company **is** very successful.



4 You **play** the guitar very well.



5 Jean **cooks** the dinner in the evening.



6 This TV show **is** very interesting.



7 Sonia and Rick **live** in Paris.



8 My son **is** a firefighter.



9 Our house **is** very big.



10 Sandra **works** late on Fridays.



11 My husband and I **relax** on weekends.



12 Edith and Sam **like** dancing in their free time.



# 03 Present simple questions

Questions in the present simple with "be" are formed by swapping the verb and subject. For other verbs, the auxiliary verb "do" or "does" must be added before the subject.



## 3.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "AM," "IS," OR "ARE"

Are you a chef?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you the new teacher?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ she your sister?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ we nearly home?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ I on the list?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ your dogs friendly?
- 6 Where \_\_\_\_\_ the front door?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ Carlo still a teacher?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ we late for the party?
- 9 Where \_\_\_\_\_ my shoes?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ that Shelly's new car?
- 11 Who \_\_\_\_\_ the manager here?
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ I too late for the concert?
- 13 When \_\_\_\_\_ your birthday?
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ he here for the presentation?
- 15 Where \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom?
- 16 \_\_\_\_\_ I supposed to be at work?
- 17 Why \_\_\_\_\_ they angry?
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ it time to eat yet?
- 19 \_\_\_\_\_ they coming to the seminar?



## 3.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "DO" OR "DOES"

Does he work in a hotel?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Laura have a brother?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ they know your address?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Craig still live in Dublin?
- 4 Where \_\_\_\_\_ your mother work?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ they know your father?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant serve fish?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ you still have my book?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ your house have a garage?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ we have enough time?
- 10 How \_\_\_\_\_ Ben travel to work?
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ your parents have a car?
- 12 When \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson end?
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ you work on Saturdays?
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ she play any instruments?
- 15 What \_\_\_\_\_ you want for dinner?
- 16 \_\_\_\_\_ I need to wear a dress?
- 17 What \_\_\_\_\_ he want this time?
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ they know what time it is?
- 19 Where \_\_\_\_\_ she buy her clothes?





### 3.3 MARK THE QUESTIONS THAT ARE CORRECT



Does she goes to your school?

Does she go to your school?

1



Does Danielle plays baseball very often?

Does Danielle play baseball very often?

2



Do you know how to play the electric guitar?

Do know you how to play the electric guitar?

3



Does your daughter know how to drive a car?

Do your daughter knows how to drives a car?

4



What time does you get up in the morning?

What time do you get up in the morning?



### 3.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS QUESTIONS

You play the piano.

*Do you play the piano?*



6 Jim has a lot of homework this weekend.



1 She likes going to the theater.



7 They live in London.



2 Carlo likes Chinese food.



8 It rains often here.



3 You like gardening.



9 Peter enjoys taking photos.



4 He knows how to play chess.



10 Sally knows how to swim.



5 Cleo has breakfast every morning.



11 They play golf on Saturdays.



# 04 The present continuous

The present continuous is used to talk about continued actions that are happening in the present moment. It is formed with "be" and a present participle.

## 4.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT ANSWERS



Pedro is hiking in the mountains.

Michael is watching TV.

Martin is cooking dinner for his family.

Michelle is visiting a gallery.

## 4.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

The children are playing football.

- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful red dress.
- 2 Matilda \_\_\_\_\_ a travel book about Brazil.
- 3 My cat \_\_\_\_\_ the apple tree.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ such an interesting book.
- 5 Hetty and Paula \_\_\_\_\_ some orange juice.
- 6 Phil \_\_\_\_\_ for his piano lesson.

am reading  
~~are playing~~  
 is climbing  
 is practicing  
 is reading  
 are wearing  
 are drinking



### 4.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Simon \_\_\_\_\_ *is walking* \_\_\_\_\_ (  **walk**) to work today.

① Clara \_\_\_\_\_ (  **try**) on some new shoes.

② I \_\_\_\_\_ (  **write**) a letter to my girlfriend.

③ Sanjay \_\_\_\_\_ (  **learn**) to drive.

④ Mel and Tim \_\_\_\_\_ (  **get married**) today.

⑤ Robin \_\_\_\_\_ (  **not study**) for the French exam this afternoon.

⑥ Sam and Ashwin \_\_\_\_\_ (  **play**) baseball at the park.

⑦ My sister's friend \_\_\_\_\_ (  **perform**) on stage now.



### 4.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Diane is buying a new house.



Diane buys a new house.



①



Sam and Pete not playing cards in the living room.



Sam and Pete aren't playing cards in the living room.



②



The children eat pizza once a week.



The children are eating pizza once a week.



③



Julian is wearing a suit for the meeting.



Julian is wears a suit for the meeting.







#### 4.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>Is she coming</p> <p>1 Are they going</p> <p>2 What are we</p> <p>3 Is it</p> <p>4 Why is Lisa</p>		<p>eating for dinner?</p> <p>snowing outside?</p> <p>to the party tonight?</p> <p>wearing such fancy clothes?</p> <p>to the festival?</p>
---	--	---



#### 4.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

talking on They phone. are the

*They are talking on the phone.*

1 playing today. Chris football isn't

2 your game? watching Are football kids a

3 wife her is friend afternoon. My visiting this

4 is the Selma at living Where moment?

5 wearing Joe a isn't tie today.



## 4.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS QUESTIONS

She is eating an apple.

*Is she eating an apple?*

1 They are driving to the beach.

\_\_\_\_\_

2 You are going swimming.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 She is watching a movie.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Nelson is going shopping.

\_\_\_\_\_

5 Ben is listening to classical music.

\_\_\_\_\_

6 Chrissie is climbing the tree.

\_\_\_\_\_

7 Sven and Olly are singing.

\_\_\_\_\_

8 You are drinking apple juice.

\_\_\_\_\_

9 They are playing tennis.

\_\_\_\_\_

10 My son is reading a book.

\_\_\_\_\_

11 Pavel is speaking Russian.

\_\_\_\_\_

12 You are wearing a dress.

\_\_\_\_\_



## 4.8 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS NEGATIVES

We are enjoying the show.

*We are not enjoying the show.*

1 I am going to the zoo.

\_\_\_\_\_

2 The dog is chasing a cat.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 They are walking their dog.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Angela is wearing a dress.

\_\_\_\_\_

5 We are playing chess.

\_\_\_\_\_

6 I am eating Chinese food.

\_\_\_\_\_

7 James is wearing your shirt.

\_\_\_\_\_

8 You are reading a book.

\_\_\_\_\_

9 She is cleaning her room.

\_\_\_\_\_

10 Ed and Gus are watching a movie.

\_\_\_\_\_

11 I am speaking French.

\_\_\_\_\_

12 It is raining outside.

\_\_\_\_\_



# 05 Present tenses overview

The present simple and present continuous are used in different situations. There are different ways to form questions and negatives with these tenses.



## 5.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



Mike and Ellie are painting their house this afternoon.



3 Is Dimitri still \_\_\_\_\_ the garage wall?



1 Annabelle \_\_\_\_\_ caves in her free time.



4 Brendan \_\_\_\_\_ watching comedies on TV in the evenings.



2 João \_\_\_\_\_ dogs. He's really scared of them.



5 Sid and Les \_\_\_\_\_ at the beauty salon.

explores

~~are painting~~

work

doesn't like

loves

building



## 5.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Jim ~~tries~~ / **is trying** to build a chair.



1 Kit **goes** / **is going** scuba diving with her friends on Fridays.



2 Ben and Kelly **dance** / **are dancing** at the club tonight.



3 Sai **puts** / **is putting** the dishes in the dishwasher each evening.



4 Bruce **waits** / **is waiting** to go for a walk.



## 5.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE OR THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Alastair usually plays (**play**) tennis, but this afternoon he is playing (**play**) badminton.

1 Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (**not send**) letters often, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (**write**) one to her mother now.

2 I \_\_\_\_\_ (**work**) from home today, but usually I \_\_\_\_\_ (**work**) in an office.

3 We usually \_\_\_\_\_ (**go**) to Spain on vacation, but this year we \_\_\_\_\_ (**go**) to Mexico.

4 Helen \_\_\_\_\_ (**work**) in an elementary school. She \_\_\_\_\_ (**teach**) math right now.

5 I \_\_\_\_\_ (**not eat**) meat very often, but tonight I \_\_\_\_\_ (**have**) a steak.

6 It \_\_\_\_\_ (**not rain**) often in California, but today it \_\_\_\_\_ (**pour**).

7 My cousin \_\_\_\_\_ (**perform**) on stage now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (**love**) her voice.

8 Rajiv \_\_\_\_\_ (**wear**) a T-shirt now, but he always \_\_\_\_\_ (**wear**) a shirt at work.

9 My dad \_\_\_\_\_ (**sleep**) now. He \_\_\_\_\_ (**be**) tired after the journey.

10 Juan normally \_\_\_\_\_ (**start**) work at 8am, but today he \_\_\_\_\_ (**go**) to the dentist.

11 Bob \_\_\_\_\_ (**take**) a taxi to work this morning, but he usually \_\_\_\_\_ (**take**) the bus.



## 5.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Mario sometimes	living at the moment?
1	My brother doesn't	in the kitchen?
2	My mom usually bakes	plays tennis with his uncle.
3	Where is your sister	play golf with your colleagues?
4	Tom's new girlfriend	work on Friday afternoons.
5	What's dad cooking	a cake on the weekends.
6	How often do you	lives in a resort in Spain.



## 5.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

never the Ben bus work. takes to

*Ben never takes the bus to work.*

1 you soccer weekend? Do the on play

2 Paula French college? studying Is at

3 your Why wearing a is today? dad suit

4 usually at Fridays. works on Clarissa home





## 5.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Do Christina still have a cat?

Does Christina still have a cat?

1



Lou wakes up at 7am each morning.

Lou wake up at 7am each morning.

2



Henry is performing at a country and western club tonight.

Henry are performing at a country and western club tonight.

3



Tanya doesn't feels well, so she's not coming to the party.

Tanya doesn't feel well, so she's not coming to the party.



## 5.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Unfortunately, Mr. Clarke **doesn't understands** Russian.

*Unfortunately, Mr. Clarke doesn't understand Russian.*



1

Steve **read** in bed before he **go** to sleep.



2

Lisa and Tim **goes** to the gym after work.



3

My mom **plays** golf with her friend this afternoon.



4

Vernon **don't like** snakes. He really **hate** them.



5

We often **are going** to the café by the park.



6

Craig **walking** in the mountains with Rob this week.



# 06 Imperatives

Imperatives are used to give commands or to make requests. They can also be used to give warnings or directions.



**6.1** FIND MORE IMPERATIVES IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE HEADING

G G N I D R A W B Y R U N  
 N S A I H E L P T A K E V  
 N W E M J S M D S M A R D  
 G I V E E R T I S T A R T  
 S K A M E B O T R Q I N G  
 W R I T E Y A D F G I N D  
 W R L O L A O Z B E G I N  
 P W O R K N V O N S E N D  
 T C D H T N D E G J A Q I  
 E H I J L I S T E N U S S  
 R E C E P S T I I G G E D  
 G E F D B C A H T J J L M  
 Q K P P Y T U R N D I W G  
 E D I S R Y A D F A E N T  
 M Z L O L A O Z I O R I Z  
 C O M E S N V O N O E Y D  
 T C D H T N D E G J A G I  
 E H I J A R E A D E O S S  
 R E C E A E E I S N G K O  
 B S M I L E H E I D J L M

IMPERATIVES

*write*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_



## 6.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

1 Don't sit there! It's Andrew's chair.

2 Pass me the stapler, please.

3 Let me help you with your bags, Vera.

4 Be careful on the wet floor!

5 Take the second road on the right.

## 6.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

1 Give me a the window.

2 Turn right the theater.

3 Eat your minute, please.

4 Give the cake the grass.

5 Please close road on the left.

6 Let's go to at the crossroads.

7 Don't walk on that vase!

8 Take the first to Layla.

9 Don't touch breakfast, Greg!

## 6.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

1 on chair. broken Don't the sit  
*Don't sit on the broken chair.*

2 left the library. Turn after

3 give please. Just a me minute,

4 ahead the Go at straight crossroads.

5 door. close the Please

6 to the brother. book Give your

7 loudly! Don't so sing

# 07 The past simple

The past simple is used to talk about completed actions that happened at a fixed time in the past. It is the most commonly used past tense in English.



## 7.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PAST SIMPLE VERBS IN THE PANEL

After work, Phil listened to music.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ my bedroom this morning.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ football in the afternoon.
- 3 After his dinner, Alex \_\_\_\_\_ a movie on TV.
- 4 My wife \_\_\_\_\_ her parents yesterday.
- 5 Lucia \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends at the party.

played  
~~listened~~ watched  
 visited danced  
 cleaned



## 7.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

After I finished work

- 1 Terry usually takes the metro to work,
- 2 I arrived at work early
- 3 In the morning we walked to
- 4 Angela cried when she
- 5 We usually go to France
- 6 Jemma washed the dishes
- 7 Roger listened to some music

so I checked my email.

the old town and visited the museum.

I decided to go for a swim.

but yesterday he walked instead.

after she finished her dinner.

then started reading his new book.

heard the sad news.

but last year we traveled around Russia.



### 7.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

hurried catch The last to the children bus.

*The children hurried to catch the last bus.*

1 so felt to she Amy doctor. sick, went the

2 walk I but to usually the yesterday I café, drove.


3 laughed Martin's she joke. Mia heard when





### 7.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE




Jason ~~stepped~~ / stepped off the bus and headed toward the café.


1  Simone ~~tryed~~ / tried to open the door, but it was completely stuck.

2  Elena ~~decideed~~ / decided to wear a nice dress to the dinner party that evening.

3  Chan ~~washed~~ / washd the dishes after she and Dan had eaten.

4  Stephan and Klara ~~hurried~~ / hurried to catch the last train home.

5  The waiter ~~dropped~~ / droped the dishes onto the floor.

6  Megan ~~carryed~~ / carried the files into the office.





## 7.5 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

When I was a kid I had (have) two hamsters named Kim and Star.

- 1 Marilyn \_\_\_\_\_ (go) with Clive to the exhibition at the gallery.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Phil and Dan at the party last night.
- 3 Sheila \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) across the lake to the island.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) a large bottle of water after the race.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to a beautiful resort in the mountains.
- 6 Carol \_\_\_\_\_ (put) her cup down on the table.
- 7 Seb \_\_\_\_\_ (do) his homework on the bus to school.
- 8 Omar \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a scarf for his wife at the market.
- 9 She \_\_\_\_\_ (draw) a beautiful picture of a cherry tree.



## 7.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "WAS" OR "WERE"

Irena and Jon were students together in Madrid.

- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_ at Paulina's party on Saturday.
- 2 Joanna \_\_\_\_\_ very tired after the flight to Australia.
- 3 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ delighted when I passed all my exams.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ so many people waiting to buy a ticket.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ upset when I lost my purse.
- 6 Liam \_\_\_\_\_ a pilot for more than 40 years.
- 7 There \_\_\_\_\_ a loud bang in the kitchen.
- 8 My cousins \_\_\_\_\_ famous dancers in the 1990s.
- 9 We \_\_\_\_\_ at the convention last year.





## 7.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE PAST SIMPLE

Sam **goes** running with friends in the local park.

*Sam went running with friends in the local park.*



1 Robin **wants** to go skiing in the winter.



2 Julie and Scott **drink** a lot of coffee at the café.



3 Eli **goes** camping in the woods last summer.



4 Jon **plays** rugby on Saturday afternoon.



5 I **watch** TV dramas until late last night.



6 We **go** to a jazz club to listen to live music.



7 Sadiq's dog **barks** in the yard all evening.



8 The pollution in my city is very bad.



9 Angelo **eats** an apple for his lunch.



10 Kyle **makes** his bed after getting up in the morning.



11 Tina **plays** the piano with her little brother.



# 08 The past simple negative

The past simple negative is used to talk about things that did not happen in the past. It is always formed the same way, unless the main verb is "be."



## 8.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I didn't walk to work today.

because she felt tired.

1 Emily didn't go to the party

Jenny didn't call him on his birthday.

2 The sports car cost a huge amount,

I took the train instead.

3 Ben was upset because

so we didn't buy it.

4 My uncle didn't enjoy the film

she didn't talk to anyone at the party.

5 The teacher shouted at me

because he hates science fiction.

6 Katie is very shy, so

because I didn't do my homework.



## 8.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Joanne and Greg didn't knew which road to take to get to the restaurant.

Joanne and Greg didn't know which road to take to get to the restaurant.

1



Zehra didn't played football yesterday. She went fishing.

Zehra didn't play football yesterday. She went fishing.

2



Michael did not like the burger he ordered, so he sent it back.

Michael not liked the burger he ordered, so he sent it back.

3



I didn't went out last night; I stayed in and watched TV instead.

I didn't go out last night; I stayed in and watched TV instead.



### 8.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Lloyd ~~wasn't~~ / ~~weren't~~ happy with the new computer he'd just bought.

- 1 There ~~wasn't~~ / ~~weren't~~ enough sandwiches for everyone.
- 2 I ~~not did~~ / ~~did not finish~~ mowing the lawn because I was tired.
- 3 The book ~~wasn't~~ / ~~weren't~~ interesting, so I watched TV instead.
- 4 Joe ~~didn't make~~ / ~~didn't made~~ enough potatoes for everyone.
- 5 The students ~~not understood~~ / ~~didn't understand~~ the teacher.
- 6 There ~~wasn't~~ / ~~weren't~~ many people at the concert last night.
- 7 It ~~wasn't~~ / ~~weren't~~ very warm outside, so we stayed at home.
- 8 My brother ~~didn't enjoy~~ / ~~didn't enjoyed~~ the movie very much.



### 8.4 WRITE EACH SENTENCE IN ITS OTHER FORM

Paula **was** on time for work today.

*Paula wasn't on time for work today.*

1 We **spoke** to Ellen.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

They **were not** happy.

3 They **were** late.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

I **didn't wait** for Carl.

5 Lola **understood**.

6 \_\_\_\_\_

Brendan **wasn't there**.

7 They **paid** the bill.

8 \_\_\_\_\_

Hugh **did not talk** to me.

9 Claire **ate** the cake.

10 \_\_\_\_\_

She **didn't go** swimming.



# 09 Past simple questions

Questions in the past simple are formed using "did."  
For past simple questions with "be," the subject and the verb "was" or "were" are swapped around.



## 9.1 MATCH THE STATEMENTS TO THEIR QUESTION FORMS

You sold your house recently.

1 Salvador won the lottery.

2 Peter took a shower earlier.

3 They drank all the juice.

4 Nick washed the dishes.

5 Sam bought a sports car.

6 They built a new house.

Did Peter take a shower earlier?

Did they drink all the juice?

Did you sell your house recently?

Did Salvador win the lottery?

Did they build a new house?

Did Nick wash the dishes?

Did Sam buy a sports car?



## 9.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT QUESTIONS



How was your band practice yesterday?

Were you at the party last night?

Why was Xander late for the meeting?

Was it very windy on the island?





### 9.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

you down? Where broke when were car your

*Where were you when your car broke down?*

1 the Did for take walk? you dog a

2 did home night? you last How get

3 food the Greece? was in like What



### 9.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Did Josie went to work today? She said she was feeling unwell last night.

*Did Josie go to work today? She said she was feeling unwell last night.*



1 Why you were both so late for work this morning?



2 Were Katie pleased with the present you got her?



3 Did you took any good photos while you were on vacation?



4 What the weather was like while you were in Greece?



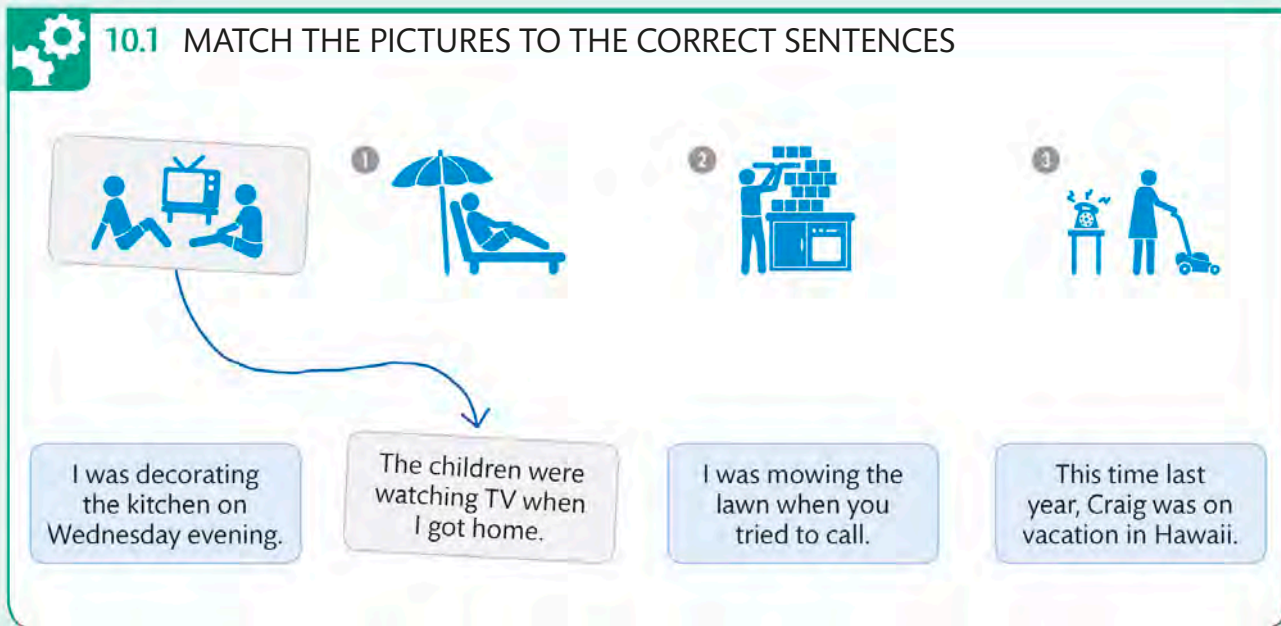
5 Where you did buy that lovely suit, Vincent?



# 10 The past continuous

The past continuous is used in English to talk about actions or events that were in progress at some time in the past. It is formed with "was" or "were" and a present participle.

**10.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES**



1 The children were watching TV when I got home.

2 I was mowing the lawn when you tried to call.

3 This time last year, Craig was on vacation in Hawaii.

4 I was decorating the kitchen on Wednesday evening.

**10.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE**

I **was eating** / ~~ate~~ my dinner when there ~~was being~~ / **was** a knock on the door.

- 1 We **were sunbathing** / ~~sunbathed~~ when it **was beginning** / ~~began~~ to rain.
- 2 When I **was meeting** / ~~met~~ Tracy yesterday, she **was wearing** / ~~wore~~ a lovely dress.
- 3 It **was being** / ~~was~~ a beautiful day and the birds **were singing** / ~~sang~~ in the trees.
- 4 I **was hearing** / ~~heard~~ a loud bang when I **was watching** / ~~watched~~ TV last night.
- 5 It **was starting** / ~~started~~ to rain while I **was talking** / ~~talked~~ on the telephone.



### 10.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

you a were suit wearing

Why were you wearing a suit yesterday, Paul?

in the hiking were Alps

1 We \_\_\_\_\_ this time last year.

he driving work saw was when to

2 Colm \_\_\_\_\_ a deer.

I talking were when you to you saw

3 Who \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?

raining again wasn't it

4 It was cloudy yesterday, but at least \_\_\_\_\_.



### 10.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES

We were walking (walk) in the forest when we saw (see) a bear.

1 Mia \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Sydney while she \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) around Australia.

2 The children \_\_\_\_\_ (read) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (enter) the classroom.

3 Ravi \_\_\_\_\_ (see) an old castle when he \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the forest.

4 The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (shine) when we \_\_\_\_\_ (set off) on the journey home.



# 11 The present perfect simple

The present perfect simple is used to talk about events in the recent past that still have an effect on the present moment. It is formed with "have" and a past participle.



## 11.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "HAS" OR "HAVE" TO COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Tess has visited France many times, but she has never been to Paris.



1 Daria \_\_\_\_\_ baked a delicious cake for everyone at the office.



2 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ decided to buy a little cottage in the country.



3 Ola \_\_\_\_\_ taken the day off and \_\_\_\_\_ gone to the new gallery in town.



4 We \_\_\_\_\_ decided when we're going to get married.



## 11.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Karen has called the police about her noisy neighbors.

- 1 Hank \_\_\_\_\_ the letter from his college yet.
- 2 My children \_\_\_\_\_ the car at last.
- 3 Kelly still \_\_\_\_\_ her bedroom. It's so messy!
- 4 Danny \_\_\_\_\_ the bedroom and the living room.
- 5 Jess \_\_\_\_\_ Peru and Ecuador so far this year.

hasn't cleaned  
has painted     ~~has called~~  
hasn't opened  
has visited     have washed





### 11.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

Michelle has bought (buy) a puppy for her daughter.

- 1 Fran and Leo \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the fair together.
- 2 Angelo \_\_\_\_\_ (not cook) dinner for his family yet.
- 3 Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) all the windows in her apartment.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not meet) Nick's new girlfriend yet.
- 5 Morgan \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) this movie at least six times already.
- 6 Mr. Fernandez and his son \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the building.



### 11.4 FIND EIGHT MORE PAST PARTICIPLES IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

G G P I D R A O B W O T S  
 N S U N T I N H E L P E D  
 N D T M J S M D S M S R D  
 W A N T E D T I U T W U I  
 S M A Y E B O H R F U J G  
 E D I S R Y A S V U M N D  
 M Z L O W A L K E D R I Z  
 P A A E S N V O N S E N M  
 K A S K E D D E G J A G I  
 E H C E A R I D O N E S S  
 R E C M P S K I I N G E D  
 A N C G I V E N I J J E M  
 R E P E P S K D O S E N N  
 W A T C H E D H I J J L M

#### REGULAR

- wanted
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_

#### IRREGULAR

- given
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_



## 11.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Did you always live in this apartment, Vicky?

Have you always lived in this apartment, Vicky?

① I have studied French in college a long time ago.

I studied French in college a long time ago.

② I haven't lived in Venezuela since 2009.

I didn't live in Venezuela since 2009.

③ Kevin has first visited Munich in 1997.

Kevin first visited Munich in 1997.

④ Enzo finished the report on Friday.

Enzo has finished the report on Friday.

⑤ Sebastian is working as a chef for 10 years.

Sebastian has worked as a chef for 10 years.



## 11.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Paula **hasn't did** her French homework yet.

*Paula hasn't done her French homework yet.*

① Owen **has started** work here in 2017.

---

② I **have spoke** to Tina about this twice today already.

---

③ How many countries **have you visit** so far?

---

④ Gloria **has never trying** windsurfing before.

---

⑤ Fabio **have lived** in England for more than 15 years.

---

## 11.7 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH QUESTION

Where is Janet today?



She's been to France, but she'll be back next week.

She's gone to France, but she'll be back next week.

1 What's wrong, Frank?



I've just been to the dentist for a filling.

I've just gone to the dentist for a filling.

2 Where are Rob and Susan this afternoon?



They've been to the library.

They've gone to the library.

3 I saw Claire come in with lots of bags.



Yes, she's been shopping with her friends.

Yes, she's gone shopping with her friends.

4 You look hot, Paul.



Yes, I've just been for a run.

Yes, I've just gone for a run.

5 Hi, is Sammy there?



No, she's been for a walk with the dog.

No, she's gone for a walk with the dog.

## 11.8 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH QUESTION

Have you seen the new exhibition in the museum?



Yes, I saw it last weekend.

Yes, I have seen it last weekend.

1 Have you visited the old temple here yet?



Of course, I've visited it many times.

Of course, I visited it many times.

2 Have you tried Greek food before?



Yes, I tried it when I went to Athens last year.

Yes, I've tried it when I've been to Athens last year.

3 Have you lived here long?



Yes, I've moved here in 1997.

Yes, I moved here in 1997.

4 Have you ever seen a play by William Shakespeare?



Yes, I saw *Macbeth* when I went to London.

Yes, I've seen *Macbeth* when I went to London.

5 Have you been snorkeling before?



Yes, I've tried it twice since I've been in Malaysia.

Yes, I tried it twice since I've been in Malaysia.



# 12 The present perfect continuous

The present perfect continuous is used to talk about a continuing activity in the past that still has an effect on the present moment. It usually refers to the recent past.



## 12.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

David has been cleaning all day, so

address for a long time?

1 Val has been learning to dance tango

so I want to go on a diet.

2 Jess has been running today

the house is really neat!

3 Have you been living at this

and looks very tired.

4 I've been eating too much cake lately,

so I don't feel very fit.

5 I haven't been running for ages,

for more than six months.



## 12.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

singing Jenny all been evening. has

*Jenny has been singing all evening.*

1 been for Colin new year. looking house a has all

2 brother's since the been Sunday. kitchen My painting

3 raining than been for week. more It's a



## 12.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

I have been driving (drive) for hours. I'm so tired!



1 I \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the house because my parents are coming tomorrow.



2 You \_\_\_\_\_ (build) that wall all day. Are you nearly finished?



3 Joe \_\_\_\_\_ (fish) all afternoon, but he hasn't caught anything yet.



4 We \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) tennis together for very long.



5 How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (train) for the marathon, Jon?



6 Josh \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) a lovely landscape this afternoon.



7 Matt and Heather \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for their exam all evening.



8 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not read) this book for very long.



9 Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) all summer.



10 \_\_\_\_\_ Robin \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) all day? He looks exhausted.



11 I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to cook a new recipe today.



12 Ed \_\_\_\_\_ (not feel) well, so I told him to go to the doctor.



13 My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (tour) Europe with his band.



14 My manager \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) at his desk all afternoon.



# 13 The past perfect simple

English uses the past perfect simple with the past simple to talk about two or more events that happened at different times in the past.



## 13.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

George was relieved because he had found his passport.

- 1 The play \_\_\_\_\_ by the time we arrived at the theater.
- 2 Ben liked Sal, even though he \_\_\_\_\_ her only a few times.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ Indian food before, so I didn't know what to expect.
- 4 Justin called his sister, but she \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.
- 5 Edith \_\_\_\_\_ her niece for years so was delighted when she visited.
- 6 Amber felt so happy that she \_\_\_\_\_ her exam.
- 7 My uncle was upset because I \_\_\_\_\_ him recently.
- 8 Christine worked late because she \_\_\_\_\_ her project yet.
- 9 There were a lot of delays because a bus \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 When we arrived at the station, we discovered the train \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11 Amy couldn't take her flight because she \_\_\_\_\_ her passport.
- 12 My son looked bored because he \_\_\_\_\_ inside the house all day.
- 13 The house looked shabby because we \_\_\_\_\_ it in years.
- 14 Jane was excited about going to Rome. She \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy before.

hadn't eaten      had started      hadn't finished      had left  
 had been      hadn't seen      hadn't called      hadn't been      ~~had found~~      had gone  
 had broken down      had passed      had met      had forgotten      hadn't painted





### 13.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I had just sat down with my drink when it started to rain.

1



Yasmin was exhausted because she had just run a marathon.

2



Janine felt really cold because she'd been outside too long.

3



Tony had called for a taxi an hour earlier, but it still hadn't arrived.

4



Pete had almost finished tiling the wall by the time I got home.



### 13.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE OR PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

I tried (try) to buy some onions, but the store had run out (run out).

1 Craig \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) late to work because he \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the train.

2 Marie \_\_\_\_\_ (not ride) a bike for years, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (find) it difficult.

3 Dana \_\_\_\_\_ (be) delighted that she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) her driving test at last.

4 James \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) breakfast when Caitlin \_\_\_\_\_ (get up).

5 She \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) San Francisco once before, when she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) seven.

6 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not meet) Karl before, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lots in common.

7 We \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the play once before, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) it anyway.

# 14 The past perfect continuous

English uses the past perfect continuous with the past simple to talk about an activity that was in progress before another action or event happened.



## 14.1 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| When Fiona finally got home, she had been traveling for 12 hours.           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| When Fiona finally got home, she has been traveling for 12 hours.           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 1 Maya had been working here for five years when I started.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Maya was working here for five years when I had started.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 2 It had been raining for a week before the sun came out.                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| It rained for a week before the sun had been coming out.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3 I got sunburned because I been lying in the sun all day.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| I got sunburned because I'd been lying in the sun all day.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4 We had been to see that movie everyone talked about at work.              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| We went to see that movie everyone had been talking about at work.          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5 Vlad had been studying English for a year when he moved to Toronto.       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Vlad had studying English for a year when he had moved to Toronto.          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 6 My computer hadn't been working properly for ages, so I bought a new one. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| My computer didn't work properly for ages, so I had bought a new one.       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 7 We only found the hotel after we been driven for more than an hour.       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| We only found the hotel after we'd been driving for more than an hour.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 8 I'd trained for years before I had been winning my first marathon.        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| I'd been training for years before I won my first marathon.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 9 Carol had been cooking all morning, so she was exhausted.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Carol had been cooked all morning, so she was exhausted.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 10 I went to the doctor because I hadn't been feeling well all week.        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| I went to the doctor because I didn't been feeling well all week.           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |



## 14.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>① Marion had been learning Spanish</p> <p>② The forest looked beautiful because</p> <p>③ Kelly had been practicing all week,</p> <p>④ Clive had been complaining</p> |  | <p>so her performance was perfect.</p> <p>about the bad smell all week.</p> <p>it had been raining all day.</p> <p>for six months before she went to Spain.</p> <p>it had been snowing all night.</p> |
|---|--|---|



## 14.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE OR PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

When the package finally arrived (arrive), Dave had been waiting (wait) for hours.



① Nina \_\_\_\_\_ (shop) all morning and \_\_\_\_\_ (need) a coffee.



② Carla \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Paris for 10 years when she \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Liam.



③ Chris \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) exhausted because he \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football all day.



④ Phil \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV when the telephone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring).



⑤ Jill \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) ill all day, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early.



⑥ The kids \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV all afternoon because it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so cold outside.



⑦ Jo \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for years before she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the exam.



⑧ Ahmed \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for hours before he finally \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the office.





# 15 "Used to" and "would"

When talking about habits or states in the past, "used to" or "would" are often used. English often uses these forms to contrast the past with the present.



## 15.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



Ricardo used to play the piano, but now he prefers the violin.



3 There \_\_\_\_\_ any factories here. There were beautiful woods.



1 I \_\_\_\_\_ in London, but I moved to Paris 10 years ago.



4 When I worked, I \_\_\_\_\_ at 5am. Now I relax in the morning.



2 When I was a teenager, I \_\_\_\_\_ fishing on Saturdays. Now I prefer photography.



5 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ a bike when you were a child?

would get up

used to live

use to ride

~~used to play~~

didn't use to be

would go



## 15.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Harry would be an engineer before he became a teacher.

Harry used to be an engineer before he became a teacher.

① Dana was playing soccer with her friends when she was a child.

Dana used to play soccer with her friends when she was a child.

② Chris didn't use to have such long hair.

Chris didn't used to have such long hair.

③ I would visit Prague three times when I was a child.

I visited Prague three times when I was a child.

④ Maria used to believe in ghosts when she was little.

Maria use to believe in ghosts when she was little.

⑤ I used to know Andre well when I was a student.

I would know Andre well when I was a student.



## 15.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Jenny didn't **used to** like ice cream, but now she loves it.

*Jenny didn't use to like ice cream, but now she loves it.*



① I would **tried** to save money when I was at college.



② My brother **used** read comics when he was a kid.



③ Did **use you** play computer games when you were young?



④ I **didn't used** to read novels, but I really enjoy them now.



# 16 Past tenses review

There are eight different ways to talk about the past in English. The differences between the past simple and the present perfect simple are particularly important.



## 16.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Tom went to the doctor last week because he ~~has been feeling~~ / **had been feeling** unwell.

1



When I saw Sam earlier this morning, he **was mopping** / ~~has mopped~~ the floor.

2



Ron and Tim **are working** / **have worked** at the salon for more than 10 years.

3



Danny ~~wasn't understanding~~ / **didn't understand** what the man was saying.

4



When I was a kid, I **used to be** / ~~would be~~ scared of spiders.

5



I love travel, but I ~~haven't been~~ / **did not go** to New York before.

6



I discovered the loggers ~~were cutting~~ / **had cut** down almost all the trees.

7



Pavel went outside and **had built** / **built** a snowman in the park.

8



We were delayed, and the concert ~~had started~~ / **started** by the time we arrived.

9



Ash ~~had been studying~~ / **was studying** Spanish for years before he moved to Madrid.

10



We **have been hiking** / **hiked** all morning. Let's have a break, shall we?

11



It was a beautiful day, and the sun **had shone** / **was shining** through the window.





## 16.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I couldn't get into my house	and the garden was flooded.
1	How long have you	but she's never tried Vietnamese food.
2	Pedro has been living in his apartment	because I had lost my keys.
3	It had been raining all night,	when he bumped into an old school friend.
4	Chrissie loves trying new dishes,	been studying English?
5	Peter was walking home	at the museum last weekend?
6	Did you go to the new exhibition	for more than six months.



## 16.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

every family go camping to used My year. together

*My family used to go camping together every year.*

1 well, wasn't he feeling home. Aditya so went

2 to used my didn't go school, You to you?

3 long office? How working this have been in you

4 been when for working ages had Ed here I met him.



## 16.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES

When Harriet got (get) to the station, the train had already left.

- 1 When I arrived at the venue, I realized I \_\_\_\_\_ (not bring) the tickets.
- 2 By the time we arrived at the theater, the play \_\_\_\_\_ (begin).
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) that movie yet. Jon told me it's great.
- 4 Sophie \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) all morning. She's exhausted.
- 5 Harry looked great. He \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) his new suit.
- 6 Natalia \_\_\_\_\_ (sunbathe) when she noticed a monkey in a tree.
- 7 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to the party on Friday. I was at a concert.
- 8 Len \_\_\_\_\_ (decorate). He has paint on his clothes.
- 9 Jamie \_\_\_\_\_ (practice) for months before yesterday's show.
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) my dad this morning to wish him a happy birthday.
- 11 Bill \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a bath when he heard a knock at the door.



## 16.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I was sleeping soundly when my alarm clock rang.

We were hiking in the countryside when it started to rain.

I've been dreaming of going abroad all year.

After we'd eaten, Marco helped me clear the table.



## 16.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Where **did** you **went** on vacation last year?

*Where did you go on vacation last year?*



1 It **has been** my gran's birthday yesterday.



2 I **use to** like mathematics, but now I prefer chemistry.



3 When I walked into the room, Juan **talked** on the phone.



4 We were sailing to Crete when I **was seeing** a dolphin.



5 You look hot, Karen. **Have** you **be running**?



6 When Dan **has finished** the cleaning, he went to the park.



7 We **have been** lost for three weeks before the helicopter spotted us.



8 **Are** you **lived** in this house for a long time?



9 I **have cycled** all the way to London yesterday.



10 We **walked** through the woods when we saw a bear.



11 When Ben was a child, he **was wanting** to be an astronaut.



12 **Were** you **enjoying** your vacation last week?





# 17 The future with "going to"

Future forms in English are formed using auxiliary verbs. One of the most commonly used constructions is "going to" plus the base form of the main verb.

## 17.1 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS A FUTURE PLAN OR A PREDICTION

I'm going to go see a play this weekend.

Future plan

Prediction

1 Kirsty's going to fail her exams again.

Future plan

Prediction

2 I'm not going to eat any more cake today.

Future plan

Prediction

3 That child's going to fall off the wall.

Future plan

Prediction

4 I'm going to cook a pizza for dinner tonight.

Future plan

Prediction

5 We're going to get married in April.

Future plan

Prediction

6 Marlon is going to win the race tonight.

Future plan

Prediction

7 Martin's going to travel around Morocco this summer.

Future plan

Prediction

## 17.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Ben's brought his guitar. I think he's going to sing.



The forecast says it's going to rain tomorrow.



I think Angela is going to fall off the ladder!



Ted told me he's going to travel around Egypt next year.



Cal has the ball. Is he going to score?



Look at those clouds. I think it's going to rain.



Oh dear! The waiter's going to drop all the plates.



Sam's writing on the wall. His dad's going to be furious.



### 17.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS QUESTIONS

Emma is going to start her own business.

*Is Emma going to start her own business?*



1 Gerald is going to win the race.



2 Aziz is going to sail to Ireland.



3 Fiona is going to teach us about statistics.



4 We're going to run out of milk soon.



### 17.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE WITH "GOING TO"

We are going to buy (buy) a new television.

1 My son \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) for us tonight.

2 \_\_\_\_\_ Jess \_\_\_\_\_ (study) French at college?

3 Katie \_\_\_\_\_ (not teach) us next year.

4 It looks like it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) again.

5 \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) another song for us?

6 I \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) my bike. I never use it.

7 Emily \_\_\_\_\_ (fix) the shower for us.

8 Pete \_\_\_\_\_ (play) rugby with us today.













9 Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (get) perfume for Mom's birthday again.

# 18 The future with "will"

"Will" is used to form some future tenses in English. It can be used in several different ways, which are all different from the future with "going to."



## 18.1 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE WITH "WILL"

- Alice will pass (pass) her exams this summer. 
- 1 Ronaldo will not go (not go) to bed before midnight. 
- 2 The kids will have (have) a great time in Florida next summer. 
- 3 You will love (love) the new coat I just bought for the winter. 
- 4 Mia will not eat (not eat) anything with meat in it. 
- 5 My car broke down, so I will take (take) the train to work today. 
- 6 Eric will want (want) to eat steak and fries for his dinner. 
- 7 Noah will win (win) the 400m race at the track competition. 
- 8 My children will not like (not like) that flavor of ice cream. 
- 9 Charlotte will marry (marry) her boyfriend this year. 
- 10 I will stay (stay) at home and watch TV tonight. 
- 11 Arnie will go (go) swimming with Bob and Sue. 





## 18.2 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS A PREDICTION, OFFER, PROMISE, OR DECISION



Don't worry, I'll make sure I get there in time for the start of your show.

Prediction  Offer  Promise  Decision

1



What a great idea! It's such a hot day. I'll have some ice cream, too.

Prediction  Offer  Promise  Decision

2



Make sure you take a coat, a warm hat, and a scarf. It'll be cold tonight.

Prediction  Offer  Promise  Decision

3



It's started raining! I'll finish painting the fence when the weather is better.

Prediction  Offer  Promise  Decision

4



I'll look after your dog for you while you're on vacation if you want.

Prediction  Offer  Promise  Decision



## 18.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

it's to go will sunny. They probably beach if the

*They will probably go to the beach if it's sunny.*

1

will the competition. know win he I

2

coat I definitely warm wear it's cold. if a will

3

will an new certainly The improvement. be office

# 19 The present for future events

The present simple and present continuous can be used to talk about future events that are already planned. They are usually used with a future time word or time phrase.



## 19.1 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE REFERS TO THE PRESENT OR FUTURE

The next train to Liverpool departs in three hours.

Present

Future

1 Kevin lives in a large house in Dublin.

Present

Future

2 The store closes early tomorrow because it's Sunday.

Present

Future

3 Megan's traveling around India with her brother Joseph.

Present

Future

4 We have two cats and a dog.

Present

Future

5 The next flight to Zurich leaves at 9pm tonight.

Present

Future

6 Chiara is playing tennis with her boyfriend tomorrow afternoon.

Present

Future

7 Vihaan likes watching action movies.

Present

Future

8 I can't come to dinner with you on Friday because I'm seeing Nina.

Present

Future

9 We have a rehearsal after work for the concert on Wednesday.

Present

Future

10 Janet is dancing with one of her friends.

Present

Future



## 19.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Bharti ~~sees~~ / **is seeing** a play tomorrow evening.

1



The exam **is** / **is being** next week. I'm nervous!

2



The bus to London usually **departs** / **is departing** at 5pm.

3



Phil **takes** / **is taking** his children to the library tomorrow.

4



Lech won't be at work tomorrow. He **travels** / **is traveling** to Berlin.

5



I can't come to the meeting tomorrow; I **have** / **am having** a doctor's appointment.

6



Mel and Phil **get** / **are getting** married this weekend.



## 19.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Polly **is having** an exam next week.

Polly has an exam next week.



1

We **go** to a party later if you want to join us.



2

The train from Glasgow **arrive** at 10:15pm.



3

I **go** fishing with my father this afternoon.



4

Terry **works** all next weekend to earn a bit of extra money.





# 20 The future continuous

The future continuous can be formed using “will” or “going to.” It describes an event or situation that will be in progress at some point in the future.



## 20.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
|    | I'd love to go to the theater tomorrow, | people will be living on the moon.               |
| 1  | Will you be coming into college later?  | driving past the library anyway.                 |
| 2  | In the year 3000, I think               | but I'm going to be doing my homework.           |
| 3  | I can give you a lift. I'll be          | I'll be living in a nice house in the country.   |
| 4  | Will we be having a meeting             | he'll be working as a translator in a few years. |
| 5  | I'm sure people won't be driving        | I need some help with my project.                |
| 6  | Mia is going to be bringing her         | about the new company logo?                      |
| 7  | I'm working as a waiter now, but I hope | new boyfriend to the party tonight.              |
| 8  | Will you be playing soccer              | as an actor in a few years' time.                |
| 9  | Enzo's studying French. He hopes        | with us this weekend?                            |
| 10 | I can post your letter. I'll be going   | today. She looked terrible yesterday.            |
| 11 | In 10 years' time, I hope               | Thursday to see her mother.                      |
| 12 | Tomorrow evening, Femi's band           | I'll be running my own restaurant in 10 years.   |
| 13 | I guess Liz won't be coming to work     | flying cars in 20 years' time.                   |
| 14 | Marco hopes that he'll be working       | to the post office this afternoon anyway.        |
| 15 | Sophie will be traveling to Paris next  | are going to be performing at Funky Joe's.       |



## 20.2 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS A NEUTRAL QUESTION OR A REQUEST

Will you be walking past a post office on your way home?

Neutral question  Request

1 Will you go to the supermarket later, please?

Neutral question  Request

2 Will you be going to Anastasia's party later?

Neutral question  Request

3 Will you be taking the train to Colin's wedding?

Neutral question  Request

4 Will we be having a meeting about the new company logo?

Neutral question  Request

5 Will you help me with my project, please?

Neutral question  Request



## 20.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Everyone is going to be watch the World Cup.

*Everyone is going to be watching the World Cup.*



1 I'll be live in a mansion by the time I'm 40.

\_\_\_\_\_



2 Marie is going to talking about the sales figures.

\_\_\_\_\_



3 We'll all relaxing on the beach next week!

\_\_\_\_\_



4 Cas will probably earning lots of money before too long.

\_\_\_\_\_



5 Is Martin going to be play any of his new songs?

\_\_\_\_\_



6 I think humans be exploring other planets by 2050.

\_\_\_\_\_



# 21 The future perfect

The future perfect is used to talk about an event that will overlap with, or finish before, another event in the future. It can be used in simple or continuous forms.



## 21.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT OR FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

By this time next week, I will have been traveling (travel) for a month.

- 1 Amelia \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to Cairo by the end of September.
- 2 By the end of the year, we \_\_\_\_\_ (live) here for 25 years.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Pedro \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the painting by the time we return?
- 4 The paint \_\_\_\_\_ (dry) by tomorrow morning.
- 5 By four o'clock, we \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) here for two hours.
- 6 I'm sure he \_\_\_\_\_ (win) more than 10 medals by the end of the year.
- 7 I think by the end of the year Rio \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) Yukio to marry him.
- 8 By the time she's 22, Suzy \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) college.
- 9 We \_\_\_\_\_ (complete) the project by the end of May.
- 10 Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) by this time next year.
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the assignment by early October?
- 12 How many countries \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) by the time you're 40?
- 13 By the time I'm 25, I \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for six years.
- 14 They \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the country by the time you get here.
- 15 Dan \_\_\_\_\_ (retire) by the time he's 60.
- 16 By this time next week, we \_\_\_\_\_ (be) married for a year!
- 17 Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) all day by the time the dinner's ready.
- 18 By the end of tonight, I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) this essay.





## 21.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Will Dan have made that chair by the time we come back?

1



I will have finished this book by tomorrow morning.

2



It looks like they won't have finished the building by next month.

3



Don't worry. I'm sure we'll have put up the tent by sunset.



## 21.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

I will have cleaned the whole house by the time the guests arrive.

- 1 Anika \_\_\_\_\_ for 10 years by the end of the year.
- 2 I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen by the time you return.
- 3 By December, I \_\_\_\_\_ the piano for six months.
- 4 The guests \_\_\_\_\_ all the food by the time Tom arrives.
- 5 Leroy \_\_\_\_\_ 18 by the end of next month.
- 6 In a year's time, Katie \_\_\_\_\_ in Rome for 20 years.

will have been acting      will have turned      will have been learning      will have eaten  
~~will have cleaned~~      will have been living      won't have painted

# 22 The future in the past

There are a number of constructions in English that can be used to describe thoughts about the future that someone had at some point in the past.



## 22.1 MATCH THE FUTURE SENTENCES TO THE EQUIVALENT SENTENCES THAT USE THE FUTURE IN THE PAST

We think we will have enough money to go on vacation this year.

I thought Hugo would have been promoted by the end of the year.

1 I think Hugo will have been promoted by the end of the year.

We thought we would have enough money to go on vacation this year.

2 Pari is going to buy a kitten for her daughter.

I thought Sam would pass the final English exam.

3 Do you think you'll still be working here in 2021?

Pari was going to buy a kitten for her daughter.

4 I think Sam will pass the final English exam.

I knew Michelle would become a successful singer one day.

5 Penny is going to clean her house if she has time.

Did you think you'd still be working here in 2021?

6 I know Michelle will become a successful singer one day.

Beccy wasn't going to do the English course, was she?

7 Beccy isn't going to do the English course, is she?

Penny was going to clean her house if she had time.



## 22.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE FUTURE IN THE PAST

I'm going to become a doctor if I get the grades.

*I was going to become a doctor if I got the grades.*



1 Christopher thinks he'll go traveling when he finishes college.



\_\_\_\_\_

2 Farouk is going to start cycling to work in the new year.



\_\_\_\_\_

3 I am going to cook dinner when I get home from work.



\_\_\_\_\_

4 Pablo has the ball. I think he's going to score.



\_\_\_\_\_

5 I'm sure Danny will finish the wall soon.



\_\_\_\_\_

6 I think Ania will win the athletics competition.



\_\_\_\_\_

7 My sister is going to get a cat when she moves house.



\_\_\_\_\_

8 The radio says it's going to snow tonight.



\_\_\_\_\_

9 Craig thinks he'll visit Japan in the summer.



\_\_\_\_\_

10 We're going to see a new band playing at Club 9000.



\_\_\_\_\_

11 I'm sure he's going to talk about the company's problems.



\_\_\_\_\_

12 Kelly is sure she is going to see some dolphins on vacation.



\_\_\_\_\_



# 23 Future review

English uses different constructions to talk about the future. These are mostly formed with the auxiliary verb "will" or a form of "be" with "going to."



## 23.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

knew late. Irene going to was she be

*Irene knew she was going to be late.*

1 you sister Are for meeting this my evening? dinner

2 will finished by end They the year. the have stadium the of

3 here I for working one have August, been will By year.

4 clear Petra win. that going It's isn't to

5 Derek thought at study he college. would engineering

6 lesson Does at past the begin half three?

7 in 10 I'll time, be In living Spain. years'



## 23.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

The next train to Pasadena

but I made it to work just on time.

1 I thought I was going to be late

volcanoes will be very interesting.

2 Tomorrow's lecture about

leaves the station at 4pm.

3 Tim thought the meeting

I will have finished in 10 minutes.

4 Sorry, I'm busy at the moment, but

would have started by now.



## 23.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Oh no! He **is going to** / ~~**will**~~ drop those glasses!

1



Sue tells me she **is going to** / **will** start learning Spanish next year.

2



You look tired. **I'm going to** / **I'll** get you some coffee.

3



Look at those clouds. **It's going to** / **It will** rain soon.

4



**I'm going to** / **I'll** help you with those bags, Edith.

5



Look! He **is going to** / **will** ask his girlfriend to marry him.

6



I **am going to** / **will** see a play at the theater. I've already got the tickets.

7



In the future I think people **are going to** / **will** travel to other planets.

8



**I'm going to** / **I'll** have the chocolate cake on the right, please.

## 23.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I hope Silvia's going to sing all her hits tonight.

I'm going to be working all weekend.

The forecast said it was going to rain later.

If you're not careful, you'll smash a window.

## 23.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

They thought **they will finish** the housework by 6pm.

*They thought they would finish the housework by 6pm.*



1 Our company **not going to make** a profit this year.



2 I don't think my son **will to be** an artist when he grows up.



3 I can't meet you tomorrow. **I'll play** tennis with Antoine.



4 **We going to be miss** the beginning of the play. Let's hurry!



5 Sal **will have be working** at the diner for 10 years in August.



6 I **was going eat** another piece of cake, but I remembered I was on a diet.







## 23.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| In November, I will have finished my degree.   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                  |
| In November, I will have been finishing my degree.   | <input type="checkbox"/>                             |
| 1 My son thinks we will be driving flying cars in the future.<br>My son thinks we will have driven flying cars in the future.                    | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Seb won't have finished the decorating by the time you get back.<br>Seb won't finish the decorating by the time you get back.                  | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Look! That child will fall off that wall.<br>Look! That child's going to fall off that wall.   | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 It's Angie's party tonight. I'll to bring some snacks and cakes.<br>It's Angie's party tonight. I'll bring some snacks and cakes.              | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 The train had broken down, so I knew I am going to be late.<br>The train had broken down, so I knew I was going to be late.                    | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 I'm going to buy that house I saw a couple of times last week.<br>I will buy that house I saw a couple of times last week.                     | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 Suki joins us for dinner at the Hotel Bristol.<br>Suki is joining us for dinner at the Hotel Bristol.  | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 When I turn 40, I will be living in Lisbon for 20 years.<br>When I turn 40, I will have been living in Lisbon for 20 years.                    | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 I travel to Paris by train this afternoon.<br>I am traveling to Paris by train this afternoon.   | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 I know! I'll buy my grandmother a new scarf.<br>I know! I'm going to buy my grandmother a new scarf.  | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11 John knew there were going be bad delays on the trains.<br>John knew there were going to be bad delays on the trains.                         | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 12 Do you think you'll have finished the essay by the time I arrive?<br>Do you think you'll being finished the essay by the time I arrive?       | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |
| 13 This time next year, I hope I'll have been studying medicine at college.<br>This time next year, I hope I'll be studying medicine at college. | <input type="checkbox"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> |

# 24 The passive

In most sentences, the subject carries out an action and the object receives it, or the result of it. In passive sentences, this is reversed: the subject receives the action.



## 24.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



The course is taught online.



③ The Eiffel Tower \_\_\_\_\_  
by millions of tourists each year.



① The alarm \_\_\_\_\_  
once a month at my workplace.



④ Lunch \_\_\_\_\_  
in the college cafeteria.



② The sculpture \_\_\_\_\_  
in the main hall.



⑤ The band \_\_\_\_\_  
to perform its greatest hits.

is expected

is visited

is tested

~~is taught~~

is displayed

is eaten



## 24.2 MATCH THE ACTIVE SENTENCES TO THE EQUIVALENT PASSIVE SENTENCES

A plumber is fixing the leak in my roof.

This program is used by many students.

1 Many students use this program.

The leak in my roof is being fixed.

2 A famous designer is making her new dress.

The train is usually driven by Martin.

3 Someone cleans our apartment every Thursday.

Her new dress is being made by a famous designer.

4 Martin usually drives the train.

Our apartment is cleaned every Thursday.



## 24.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The play is being performed on stage later tonight.

A new apartment building is being built near my house.

Solar panels are being used by an increasing number of people.

The game is usually played in Central Park each September.





## 24.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS INTO THE PRESENT SIMPLE OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS PASSIVE

- The newspaper is delivered (deliver) every morning at 7am.
- 1 English \_\_\_\_\_ (not understand) by many people here.
  - 2 A new shopping mall \_\_\_\_\_ (build) near the park.
  - 3 Some shows \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) by millions of people each day.
  - 4 The food \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) at home today.
  - 5 The castle \_\_\_\_\_ (surround) by dense forests.
  - 6 Our products \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_ (dispatch) within two days.
  - 7 Latin \_\_\_\_\_ (not study) by many young people.
  - 8 Guests \_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ (provide) with a complimentary lunch.
  - 9 My computer \_\_\_\_\_ (repair) at the moment.
  - 10 Kelvin \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) how to juggle today.
  - 11 The children \_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ (supervise) by two adults.
  - 12 A lot of old factories \_\_\_\_\_ (knock down).
  - 13 The crime \_\_\_\_\_ (investigate) by the police.
  - 14 Students \_\_\_\_\_ (expect) to be punctual at all times.
  - 15 I'm staying with Claire while my house \_\_\_\_\_ (decorate).
  - 16 The play \_\_\_\_\_ (perform) in French tonight.
  - 17 That course \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) by Eduardo.
  - 18 All our plastic and glass \_\_\_\_\_ (recycle) by the council.
  - 19 Ron \_\_\_\_\_ (investigate) for fraud.
  - 20 My hair \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) by a stylist from Ecuador.
  - 21 The car \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) right now.
  - 22 Karim's performance \_\_\_\_\_ (record) tonight.

# 25 The passive in the past

English uses the passive voice in the past to stress the effect of an action that happened in the past, rather than the cause of that action.



## 25.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The temple in my town was built in 1482.

1



The burglary was being investigated by the police.

2



Patrick was surrounded by all the books he had to read.

3



The roof was repaired by my father.

4



We couldn't use the kitchen because it was being painted.

5



John's birthday cake was made by his grandmother.

6



Our cat was being looked after by a friend.

7



I was taught how to drive by my aunt.



## 25.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The lecture had been canceled	because she hadn't been invited to the party.
1	When we got home,	so I didn't have a present for him.
2	Karen was so upset	because the professor was sick.
3	I hadn't been told it was Rajiv's birthday,	we discovered the house had been broken into.
4	Many houses have been damaged	about tomorrow's meeting?
5	Have all the staff been informed	It's been in the auto repair shop for ages!
6	Has your car been fixed yet?	by the recent hurricane.



## 25.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

The puppies have been given to families with big yards.

- The play \_\_\_\_\_ by the smoke alarm. We had to evacuate the theater.
- Dan's room was filthy. It \_\_\_\_\_ in weeks.
- That old factory near my house \_\_\_\_\_.
- All of the plants on the balcony \_\_\_\_\_.
- The mail \_\_\_\_\_ yet. I'm still waiting.
- Most of the forest \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
- The spy \_\_\_\_\_ by two men in hats.
- Malcolm \_\_\_\_\_ . He was so lazy!

has been demolished    was being followed    hadn't been cleaned    hasn't been delivered  
 have been watered    ~~have been given~~    was cut down    has been fired    was interrupted





## 25.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE PASSIVE IN THE PAST

The chefs were cooking lots of food for the party.

*Lots of food was being cooked for the party.*



1 People ate all of the cake that Jemima had made.



2 The thieves stole all the money from the bank's safe.



3 Someone injured my brother in a car accident yesterday.



4 People have booked all the tables in the restaurant.



5 They were building lots of tower blocks in the suburbs.



6 Nobody had explored that part of the country before.



7 They were so happy that someone had found their cat.



8 They didn't inform me that the office was closed on Friday.



9 We have sold all the tickets for tonight's movie.



10 People have never climbed that mountain before.



11 The earthquake has destroyed a lot of buildings.



12 It's cold. Someone has left the window open.



# 26 The passive in the future

English uses the passive voice in the future to stress the effect of an action that will happen in the future, rather than the cause of that action.



## 26.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE SIMPLE PASSIVE



The letter will be sent (send) to you this afternoon.

1



The new stadium \_\_\_\_\_ (open) by the president.

2



All the food \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) by our new chef, Luigi.

3



Our house \_\_\_\_\_ (not finish) by the end of the year.

4



The prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ (release) after 30 years.

5



\_\_\_\_\_ the show \_\_\_\_\_ (present) by a new DJ?

6



My latest novel \_\_\_\_\_ (publish) in January.

7



The water \_\_\_\_\_ (turn off) on Thursday morning.

8



The lecture \_\_\_\_\_ (give) by Professor O'Brien.

9



Dinner \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) in the dining room between 7 and 9pm.

10



All the laundry \_\_\_\_\_ (do) by the time you get back.

11



\_\_\_\_\_ the students \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a test at the end of the course?



## 26.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I hope my house  
will have been sold  
by next month.

The news will have  
been announced  
by now.

I'm sure we'll have  
been visited by  
aliens by 2100.

Will the dress have  
been altered before  
the wedding day?



## 26.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

By tomorrow evening, everyone will have been notified (notify) of the changes.

- 1 By 2030, intelligent robots \_\_\_\_\_ (develop).
- 2 I'm sure our car \_\_\_\_\_ (repair) by the beginning of next week.
- 3 The computer \_\_\_\_\_ (replace) before you start work.
- 4 I think Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (fire) by this time next year.
- 5 By 2050, many more galaxies \_\_\_\_\_ (discover).
- 6 Do you think the criminals \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) by then?
- 7 All our staff \_\_\_\_\_ (train) by the end of the week.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ the project \_\_\_\_\_ (complete) by the time we return?
- 9 All the issues \_\_\_\_\_ (resolve) before we release the product.
- 10 I hope the kitchen \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) by the time we move in.
- 11 Our new bed \_\_\_\_\_ (deliver) by the end of the month.
- 12 The decision \_\_\_\_\_ (make) by Friday evening.



# 27 The passive with modals

Modal verbs in English can be used in passive forms.

As with other passive constructions, the emphasis changes to the object that receives the action.



## 27.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

box kept should place. a This in be safe

*This box should be kept in a safe place.*

1 turned off should All before the leaving computers office. be

2 at must Protective all worn glasses be times.

3 have exam. about been We the told should

4 meeting until be week? the postponed in Can later the

5 tourists should a guidebook. All given the be

6 have You running could across been that street! killed

7 car been weeks have Our repaired should ago.



## 27.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |  |   |                                     |
|---|--|---|-------------------------------------|
|   |  | They should have been told that the class was canceled.   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  | They should have told that the class was canceled.        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 1 |  | All the floors must have be mopped at the end of the day. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   |  | All the floors must be mopped at the end of the day.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 2 |  | That ugly building should have been demolish years ago.   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   |  | That ugly building should have been demolished years ago. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3 |  | The mountain can be climbed with the help of ropes.       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   |  | The mountain can been climbed with the help of ropes.     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4 |  | Our forests must be protected from destruction.           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   |  | Our forests must be protect from destruction.             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5 |  | You wouldn't have been stung if you'd remained calm.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   |  | You wouldn't been stung if you'd remained calm.           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |



## 27.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |                                      |                                       |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|   | Marco's computer broke, but          | one of my teeth must be removed.      |
| 1 | Bicycles should only be ridden       | a tiger has escaped from the zoo.     |
| 2 | The dentist told me that             | it might have been repaired by now.   |
| 3 | Clara should have been given         | for one minute on each side.          |
| 4 | Everyone should be warned that       | if you are wearing a helmet.          |
| 5 | The dish could have been improved    | more time to finish her assignment.   |
| 6 | The steak should be fried            | if the car hadn't been going so fast. |
| 7 | The accident might have been avoided | if we'd used better ingredients.      |

# 28 Other passive constructions

Many idioms in English use passive forms. Some idioms use standard rules for passive forms, while others are slightly different.



## 28.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



That old house across the road is said to be haunted.

1



There is said to be a problem with crime in the local area.

2



The mountain is known to be dangerous to climb.

3



It has been revealed that the company is losing a lot of money.

4



It has been reported that many houses have been destroyed.

5



There are said to be many beautiful temples in Japan.

6



The movie star is rumored to be in a relationship with her co-star.

7



The new gallery is reported to contain a lot of modern art.





## 28.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

It's freezing! I hope that the heating will get fixed soon.

- 1 I'm hoping that I will \_\_\_\_\_ to senior manager soon.
- 2 My colleague often \_\_\_\_\_ for the quality of her work.
- 3 The bedroom's \_\_\_\_\_ next week.
- 4 My aunt's car \_\_\_\_\_ from the parking lot at work.
- 5 Samantha \_\_\_\_\_ by a dog in the local park.

gets criticized

got stolen

got bitten

getting redecorated

~~get fixed~~

get promoted



## 28.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My new dress **got deliver** yesterday. It's beautiful!

*My new dress got delivered yesterday. It's beautiful!*



- 1 This store **is know** to sell high-quality shoes.



- 2 It **been reported** that Ella is going to start performing again.



- 3 The grass **get cut** once a month by our gardener.



- 4 It **is rumor** that we are going to have an exam today.



- 5 All the dishes **got wash** by Danny.



# 29 Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences are used to describe real or hypothetical results of real or hypothetical situations. They can use many different verb forms.

## 29.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



If my dog gets hungry, he barks loudly.

When you play the violin out of tune, it sounds terrible.

If you misbehave, you get sent to detention.

Food tastes awful when you add too much salt.

## 29.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

If you don't water plants enough,

we light the fire.

1 When it gets too cold,

heat it long enough.

2 If you squeeze a balloon hard enough,

they die.

3 Water boils if you

you get fined.

4 Eggs usually break when

it explodes.

5 If you keep cooling water,

you drop them.

6 If you don't pay your bills on time,

it eventually freezes.



### 29.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

If it starts to rain, put on your coat.

- 1 If the phone rings, please \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ if you have any problems at all.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ it if you don't like it.
- 4 When you buy something expensive, always \_\_\_\_\_ the receipt.
- 5 If it's sunny tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ to use sunscreen.









Let me know  
make sure  
answer ~~put on~~  
Don't eat keep



### 29.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



If they don't hurry up, they **will** / ~~won't~~ miss their flight.

- 1  If it **stops** / **will stop** raining, I'll finish painting the fence.
- 2  If Janine works very hard, she **passes** / **will pass** her exams.
- 3  If I **don't get** / **won't get** the job, I'll be very upset.
- 4  Sally **loses** / **will lose** her job if she keeps missing deadlines.
- 5  If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we **have** / **will have** a picnic.
- 6  If I **get** / **don't get** a raise, I'll definitely go on an expensive vacation.
- 7  Sarah will go fishing on Saturday if she **has** / **doesn't have** time.
- 8  If we take this path, we **get** / **will get** there more quickly.





## 29.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

If I owned a television, I will watch the football game.

If I owned a television, I would watch the football game.

1 Phil would buy a new television if he had more money.

Phil would buy a new television if he would have more money.

2 If I didn't have a headache, I'd definitely come to the party.

If I wouldn't have a headache, I'd definitely come to the party.

3 I'd visit you more often if I'd had more time.

I'd visit you more often if I had more time.

4 If I was young again, I will go traveling around the world.

If I was young again, I would go traveling around the world.



## 29.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

they money, buy more bigger a house. If would had they

*If they had more money, they would buy a bigger house.*

1 a lottery. buy if would he Tony villa won the

2 we money, If more own we would had start business. our

3 sure would if I'm you David him. you help asked

4 went If she'd Ania go traveling, Vietnam. to



## 29.7 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE THIRD CONDITIONAL

If Carlos had studied (study) harder, he would have passed (pass) his exams.



- 1 If Fleur \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed earlier, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not feel) tired all day.
- 2 Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to jail if the police \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) him.
- 3 If Marco \_\_\_\_\_ (know) there was a test, he \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for it.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) an umbrella if I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) it was going to rain.
- 5 If Chris \_\_\_\_\_ (not score), we \_\_\_\_\_ (not win) the championship.
- 6 If I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) you were coming, I \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the apartment.
- 7 I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) you a present if I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) it was your birthday.
- 8 Dom \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) alone on his birthday if he \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) his friends.
- 9 If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not sleep) through my alarm, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not arrive) late for work.
- 10 Abbie \_\_\_\_\_ (study) art if she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to college.
- 11 If we \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) early, we \_\_\_\_\_ (not miss) the train.
- 12 Libby \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the race if she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) faster than George.
- 13 We \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) camping if \_\_\_\_\_ (know) it was going to be so hot.
- 14 If Lou \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) so hard, the project \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) such a success.



## 29.8 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1 If she hadn't forgotten her phone,</p> <p>2 If I hadn't brought the umbrella</p> <p>3 If Ed had scored higher on his tests,</p> <p>4 I'd be at work now</p> <p>5 Chloe wouldn't be sitting outside now</p> <p>6 Gordon wouldn't be in prison</p> | <p>7 if she'd remembered her key this morning.</p> <p>8 he'd be going to a good college now.</p> <p>9 she would be able to call someone for help.</p> <p>10 if he hadn't stolen the painting from the gallery.</p> <p>11 if I hadn't missed the 7am train.</p> <p>12 I'd be very wet now.</p> |
|---|---|

## 29.9 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

- If I had done this work earlier, I could be relaxing this evening.
- 1 Jemma \_\_\_\_\_ so tired now if she'd gone to bed earlier.
  - 2 If they \_\_\_\_\_ the decorating, we wouldn't be sleeping in a camper.
  - 3 If Emma \_\_\_\_\_ to our advice, she would be more successful now.
  - 4 I wouldn't be such a good athlete if I \_\_\_\_\_ so hard.
  - 5 If Len had fixed my car, I \_\_\_\_\_ to work today.
  - 6 Tim \_\_\_\_\_ it here if he had decided to join us.
  - 7 Karen wouldn't have to stand if she \_\_\_\_\_ a seat.
  - 8 If I hadn't lost my job, I \_\_\_\_\_ with my sister.
  - 9 If you \_\_\_\_\_ practicing, I'm sure you'd be a famous singer today.

had reserved    wouldn't be    had listened    wouldn't be walking    had kept  
 wouldn't be living    ~~could be relaxing~~    would love    had finished    hadn't trained





## 29.10 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

If Fiona won more races, she **will enjoy** running more.

*If Fiona won more races, she would enjoy running more.*



1 If I **have to** make a choice, I would say I prefer dogs.



2 I **would graduated** by now if I'd continued with my studies.



3 If you **won't hurry up**, you're going to be late for school.



4 You would have had a great time at the party if you **will come**.



5 We'd be on vacation now if we **haven't missed** the flight.



6 When water **will get** hot enough, it boils.



7 I **go** to the doctor if my leg still hurts tomorrow.



8 The soup **tastes** better if I had added more salt.



9 I always drink plenty of water if I **got** too hot.



10 It **would have be** a perfect party if the dog hadn't eaten the cake.



11 I **repair** the roof this afternoon if the weather's good.



12 I **will be** very scared if I ever saw a UFO.



# 30 Other conditional sentences

English allows for some variations in conditional sentence structures. These give more information about the context of the conditional.



## 30.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



If you entered the competition, you  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *could win* \_\_\_\_\_ some money!



③ We \_\_\_\_\_ camping  
 if I take a few days off work.



① You \_\_\_\_\_ an ice cream  
 if you're really good.



④ If she had practiced more, Helena  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a great singer.



② If you'd asked her to marry you, she  
 \_\_\_\_\_ yes.



⑤ If I have some free time later, I  
 \_\_\_\_\_ some gardening.

could have been

might have said

can have

could go

~~could win~~

might do



### 30.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Your infection will get worse

1 Unless you get up now,

2 She'll leave the firm

3 Unless you turn the music down,

4 You'll get sunburned

5 Unless you start working harder,

6 Angelica will get annoyed

7 Unless there's bad weather,

unless we start paying her more.

the neighbors will complain.

unless you go to the doctor today.

you're going to be late.

you're not going to graduate on time.

unless you wear sun protection.

we'll reach the summit before noon.

unless you reply to her email.



### 30.3 REWRITE THE THIRD CONDITIONAL SENTENCES USING FORMAL INVERSION

If Simon had ordered his sofa sooner, it would be here by now.

*Had Simon ordered his sofa sooner, it would be here by now.*



1 If business had been better, the company wouldn't have gone bankrupt.



2 If Pamela had been richer, she would have bought a larger house.



3 If you had studied harder, the exam wouldn't have been so difficult.



4 If Paul had attended the meeting, he would have known about the new project.



5 If the weather had been better, their trip would have been more enjoyable.





## 31

## Conditional sentences review

There are four types of conditional sentences. The zero conditional refers to real situations, but the first, second, and third conditionals all refer to hypothetical situations.



### 31.1 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE USES THE ZERO, FIRST, SECOND, OR THIRD CONDITIONAL

If she had more money, she would buy a new phone.

Zero

First

Second

Third

1 If I didn't feel so tired, I would go to Jake's party.

Zero

First

Second

Third

2 If you eat another cupcake, you will feel ill.

Zero

First

Second

Third

3 Plants die if you don't give them water.

Zero

First

Second

Third

4 If Juan had studied harder, he could have been a doctor.

Zero

First

Second

Third

5 If the weather is nice tomorrow, we will go to the beach.

Zero

First

Second

Third

6 We will miss the train if you don't hurry up.

Zero

First

Second

Third

7 If you mix red and yellow, you get orange.

Zero

First

Second

Third

8 I'd study mathematics at college if I were you.

Zero

First

Second

Third

9 I would have returned this suit if I hadn't lost the receipt.

Zero

First

Second

Third

10 If I had a lot of money, I'd buy a sports car.

Zero

First

Second

Third



### 31.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES ADDING COMMAS WHERE NECESSARY

If David finishes his homework he can play with his toys.

*If David finishes his homework, he can play with his toys.*



1 If I had more money I'd go on vacation to Rome.



2 We would have packed warmer clothes if we'd known it was so cold here.



3 They could play baseball if it stopped raining.



4 If you keep practicing you will win the championship.



### 31.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

If you will win the race, you'll get a medal.

If you win the race, you'll get a medal.

1 I would have passed the test if I'd studied.

I would passed the test if I'd studied.

2 If Mia had more time, she'd start a hobby.

If Mia has more time, she'd start a hobby.

3 If it's sunny tomorrow, I go swimming.

If it's sunny tomorrow, I'll go swimming.

4 If you heat ice, it turns into water.

If you will heat ice, it turns into water.

5 I'd have caught the bus if I hadn't overslept.

I'd have catch the bus if I hadn't overslept.

6 If my team won't win, I'll be disappointed.

If my team doesn't win, I'll be disappointed.

7 If Mel won the lottery, she'd buy a villa.

If Mel won the lottery, she'll buy a villa.

8 If I had seen Rob, I would said hello.

If I had seen Rob, I would have said hello.

9 If I'm late again, my boss is so angry.

If I'm late again, my boss will be so angry.

10 If she had asked me, I would have helped her.

If she asked me, I would have helped her.

11 If you go to bed earlier, you'd feel less tired.

If you went to bed earlier, you'd feel less tired.

# 32 Future possibilities

There are many ways to talk about imaginary future situations. Different structures can be used to indicate whether a situation is likely or unlikely.



## 32.1 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS LIKELY, UNLIKELY, OR DIDN'T HAPPEN

Suppose the factory closed down. Where would we work instead?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

1 What if we miss the train? We won't get to the wedding on time.

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

2 Suppose I hadn't met Ella. Who would I be with now?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

3 What if I hadn't moved to New York? Would I still be living in Chicago?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

4 What if you won the election? How would you feel?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

5 Suppose I'd practiced every day for the recital. Would I have sounded better?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

6 What if I took piano classes? Do you think I'm too old to start?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

7 Suppose you saw a tiger. What would you do?

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

8 What if someone doesn't eat meat? We'd better make something vegetarian too.

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

9 Let's take some waterproof jackets in case it rains at the festival.

Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen

10 What if I got a new job? I'd like to work for a museum.








Likely  Unlikely  Didn't happen



### 32.2 MATCH THE SENTENCES TOGETHER

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Make sure you lock the doors                | Where do you think you'd work?            |
| ① What if Vicky became a famous actress?    | We may not be able to find the path.      |
| ② Suppose you lost your job at the café.    | in case someone tries to break in.        |
| ③ Suppose we get lost in the forest.        | She really enjoys drama, after all.       |
| ④ Let's prepare some more food              | What if the audience don't like me?       |
| ⑤ Take some water with you                  | in case more people arrive.               |
| ⑥ I'm nervous about going on stage tonight. | in case you get hot while you're jogging. |

### 32.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |  |                                     |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|
|      | What if we runned out of money? We won't be able to get home!                | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | What if we run out of money? We won't be able to get home!                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| ①  | Check the gallery's website in case it will be closed on Mondays.            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Check the gallery's website in case it is closed on Mondays.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| ②  | Suppose the factory would close. What would the town do?                     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Suppose the factory closed. What would the town do?                          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| ③  | What if we come across a bear? There are lots of them in the mountains.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | What if we will come across a bear? There are lots of them in the mountains. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| ④  | Your interview's tomorrow. Set an alarm in case you don't wake up on time.   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Your interview's tomorrow. Set an alarm in case you didn't wake up on time.  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| ⑤  | What if we would win the lottery? What would we do with the money?           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | What if we won the lottery? What would we do with the money?                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| ⑥  | Take a good book in case you got bored waiting.                              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Take a good book in case you get bored waiting.                              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

# 33 Wishes and regrets

English uses the verb “wish” to talk about present and past regrets. The tense of the verb that follows “wish” affects the meaning of the sentence.



## 33.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Pete wishes he had a better car.



This work is so hard. I wish I was on vacation.



We wish it was sunny, so we could go to the beach.



I wish I had a job where I could work outside.



Martin wishes he knew how to ski.



Joan wishes she had a lawn mower.



Simone wishes she'd remembered to bring her camera.



Ronaldo wishes he hadn't broken his guitar.



### 33.2 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE COULD STILL HAPPEN OR CAN NO LONGER HAPPEN

Brian wishes his sister would call him more often.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



1 Kasia wishes she had studied harder at school.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



2 Carmen wishes she hadn't eaten so much at dinner.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



3 Bob wishes he lived in a bigger house.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



4 If only you had told me it was your birthday.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



5 I wish you wouldn't interrupt me all the time.

Could still happen



Can no longer happen



### 33.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Public transportation here is terrible. If only **I know** how to drive.

*Public transportation here is terrible. If only I knew how to drive.*



1 I wish **I don't work** so late all the time. I'm so tired in the evenings.



2 We're lost! We **should planned** our route a little better.



3 Ed, I wish **that you stop** singing out of tune all the time.



4 If only **I can** cook! Everything I make is a disaster.





# 34 Forming questions

If a statement uses "be" or an auxiliary verb, its question form is made by inverting that verb and the subject. Any other question is formed by adding "do" or "does."

## 34.1 MATCH THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT QUESTIONS

She is a police officer.

Is there a good restaurant on Park Street?

1 The children are waiting.

Is she a police officer?

2 There is a good restaurant on Park Street.

Can Fu speak fluent French?

3 Fu can speak fluent French.

Are the children waiting?

4 Jean is going to win the game.

Should Peter tell Amy about the party?

5 Peter should tell Amy about the party.

Has Kelly bought a gift for her dad?

6 Kelly has bought a gift for her dad.

Is Jean going to win the game?

## 34.2 MATCH THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT QUESTIONS

He goes swimming on Mondays.

Does Wayne want to come to the zoo with us?

1 Anthony started his new job at the bank.

Does he go swimming on Mondays?

2 Wayne wants to come to the zoo with us.

Did Anthony start his new job at the bank?

3 Harleen worked for us a few years ago.

Do Lara and Michael go to the same school?

4 Henry likes classical music.

Do they own the bookstore by the park?

5 Lara and Michael go to the same school.

Did Harleen work for us a few years ago?

6 They own the bookstore by the park.

Does Henry like classical music?



### 34.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Do they goes to the cinema often?   
Do they go to the cinema often?

1 Does Tina still work at the boutique?   
Does Tina still works at the boutique?

2 Does you prefer cats or dogs?   
Do you prefer cats or dogs?

3 Did the children enjoyed the fair?   
Did the children enjoy the fair?

4 Did you manage to move that box?   
Did manage you to move that box?

5 Does Selma go jogging often?   
Do Selma goes jogging often?

6 Did you helped clean up after the party?   
Did you help clean up after the party?

7 Do you often go abroad on vacation?   
Do go you often abroad on vacation?

8 Doesn't Clara has two large dogs?   
Doesn't Clara have two large dogs?

9 Have you ever read *Little Women*?   
Have read you ever *Little Women*?

10 Don't you like fast food, Phillippe?   
Don't you liking fast food, Phillippe?

11 Have you ever have a driving lesson?   
Have you ever had a driving lesson?

12 Did you enjoyed the art exhibition?   
Did you enjoy the art exhibition?

13 Did you remember to feed the dog?   
Did you remembered to feed the dog?



### 34.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

~~Has~~ / Have you set a date for your wedding yet?

- 1 **Do / Does** Dora work in a bank?
- 2 **Is / Are** your colleagues coming to the party?
- 3 **Do / Does** we start work at 10am on Fridays?
- 4 **Do / Does** Marlon really live in a mansion?
- 5 Did Bill **work / worked** for the government?
- 6 **Was / Were** there many animals in the forest?
- 7 **Do / Does** Marcel come from Argentina?
- 8 Did you **went / go** to the theater last night?
- 9 **Has / Have** you seen Anika's new car?
- 10 **Is / Are** Tom going to finish the report today?
- 11 Did Bruce **live / lived** in Glasgow?
- 12 **Was / Were** John at the airport to meet you?
- 13 **Do / Does** you take a shower in the evening?
- 14 **Is / Are** there any juice left?
- 15 **Has / Have** we got enough time left?
- 16 **Is / Are** your brother coming later?
- 17 **Do / Does** Claire and Sam have any children?
- 18 **Do / Does** Tim play soccer on the weekend?
- 19 **Is / Are** those your tools on the table?
- 20 Did Elsa **have / had** a boyfriend named Gus?
- 21 **Do / Does** Ash still work at the café?
- 22 **Is / Are** your daughter still in college?
- 23 **Has / Have** Sheila seen your new house yet?





### 34.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

someone? call we Should

*Should we call someone?*

3 you the party Are later? coming to

1 finished painting Has she yet? the

4 teacher? Is Jackie still a

2 India? you Have to been

5 remember door? Did the you lock to



### 34.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS QUESTIONS

He was snowboarding in Canada last week.

*Was he snowboarding in Canada last week?*



1 Ed has lived in New York for more than 10 years.



2 Katia and Pavel are getting married in June.



3 Claudia took a flight to Rio de Janeiro.



4 Mia goes swimming every evening after work.



5 You remembered to buy some water.



6 Ron and Lily are playing tennis this afternoon.





# 35 Question words

Open questions are questions that do not have simple "yes" or "no" answers. In English, they are formed by using question words.



## 35.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Where / ~~Who~~ has your dog gone?

- 1 What / Where did you buy at the market?
- 2 Why / Who is Lena laughing so much?
- 3 Where / Which of these bags is yours?
- 4 Why / How does your dad feel today?
- 5 Whose / Who is going to teach the course?
- 6 Whose / Where car is parked outside?
- 7 How / What quickly can you finish it?
- 8 When / Where does your cousin live?
- 9 When / What does the hardware store close?
- 10 Whose / What diary is on the desk?
- 11 How / When did you last see Maria?
- 12 What / How many times has he been to Kenya?
- 13 Why / How did she quit the course?
- 14 Where / What is the entrance?
- 15 When / Who did you invite to the party?
- 16 How / What long does it take to get there?
- 17 Which / Who car should I buy?
- 18 Whose / Where did I put my glasses?



## 35.2 PUT THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

you How are today?

How are you today?

- 1 the is classroom? Where
- 2 this? Whose is phone
- 3 do you Why that? did
- 4 long wait? did How you
- 5 earlier? did meet Who you
- 6 house Which yours? is
- 7 movie the When start? does



### 35.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



How does the soup taste, Gustav?

Which of these dresses should I buy?

Which way do you think we should go?

When did you start playing the guitar, Tom?



### 35.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

What is bigger, the moon or the sun?

Which is bigger, the moon or the sun?

① What is the date today?

Which is the date today?

② What's the name of your business?

Which is the name of your business?

③ What train are you taking, the 1pm or the 3pm?

Which train are you taking, the 1pm or the 3pm?

④ What do you prefer, skiing or snowboarding?

Which do you prefer, skiing or snowboarding?

⑤ What time are they arriving?

Which time are they arriving?

⑥ If you had to choose between dogs and cats, what would you choose?

If you had to choose between dogs and cats, which would you choose?



### 35.5 MARK THE MOST LIKELY QUESTION IN EACH CONVERSATION

When do you go cycling?  
 How often do you go cycling?

I go on Saturdays.

When is the movie being released?  
 How often is the movie being released?

It's coming out next month.

When do you read?  
 How often do you read?

I read every day.

When do you perform in public?  
 How often do you perform in public?

Only around once a month.

When can we have our meeting?  
 How often can we have our meeting?

Tomorrow afternoon would be good.

When do you finish work?  
 How often do you finish work?

I finish at 5:30pm most days.



### 35.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE QUESTIONS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Who is the new manager	→	in your department?
1 How many people work		to build the new airport?
2 Where are they going		of the Italian restaurant downtown?
3 Whose coat has been left		the concert start?
4 Which way is it		on the back of that chair?
5 What time does		to Glasgow leave?
6 When does the train		to the bus station?



# 36 Open questions

Open questions can't be answered with "yes" or "no." They are formed differently depending on the main verb of the question.



## 36.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE QUESTIONS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



*How far is it* \_\_\_\_\_ to  
the nearest hotel?



3 \_\_\_\_\_ after  
the race?



1 \_\_\_\_\_ if  
you saw a ghost?



4 \_\_\_\_\_ water  
your plants?



2 \_\_\_\_\_ you  
will finish building the house?



5 \_\_\_\_\_ look  
so happy?

How do you feel

~~How far is it~~

What would you do

Why do you both

How often do you

When do you think








### 36.2 MARK THE QUESTIONS THAT ARE CORRECT

- Who should I talk to about this?
- Who I should talk to about this?
- 1 What time does the train leave?   
What time the train does it leave?
- 2 What your name is?   
What is your name?
- 3 How the movie was?   
How was the movie?
- 4 When did you get this dog?   
When you did get this dog?
- 5 Why you did phone me earlier?   
Why did you phone me earlier?
- 6 Who can speak English here?   
Who speak can English here?
- 7 Who should I call to complain?   
Who I should call to complain?
- 8 When you start work?   
When do you start work?
- 9 What is this button for?   
What this button is for?
- 10 Which dress you prefer?   
Which dress do you prefer?
- 11 Why aren't you at work today?   
Why you aren't at work today?
- 12 What do you eat for breakfast?   
What you eat for breakfast?
- 13 Where do David live?   
Where does David live?



### 36.3 REWRITE THE QUESTIONS, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

- When **she does finishes** work?   
*When does she finish work?*
- 1 What **she is going** to sing for us next?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Where **you bought** that lovely dress?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What **did happened** to your leg, Paul?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 **Who's** bicycle is that in the yard?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Why **you have to** watch so much TV?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 How **feel you** about losing your job?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Where **you do cycle** to on Sundays?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 How many times **you visited** New York?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Why **you** so angry, Anthony?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 How old **the twins are** today?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 11 What time **you do eat** your lunch?   
\_\_\_\_\_
- 12 When **you last went** camping, Sam?   
\_\_\_\_\_

# 37 Object and subject questions

There are two kinds of question: object questions and subject questions. They are formed in different ways and are used to ask about different things.

**37.1 MATCH THE QUESTIONS TO THE CORRECT ANSWERS**

Who taught you how to drive?	An artist from Australia painted it.
1 Who did you go to the party with?	My dad taught me how to drive.
2 Who painted that amazing picture?	I went with an old friend from school.
3 Who gave you that lovely necklace?	We saw a play by William Shakespeare.
4 What did you see at the theater?	Angelica. She has so much experience.
5 What are you going to have for dinner?	It was a present from my boyfriend.
6 Who are you going to offer the job to?	There was a terrible storm last week.
7 What caused all that damage to your house?	I'm going to have fish and chips.

**37.2 MARK THE CORRECT OPTION FOR EACH QUESTION**

What did she have for dinner?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

1 Who was performing last night?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

2 Who teaches you English?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

3 Who did you borrow the money from?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

4 What just made that awful noise outside?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

5 Who paid for all these drinks?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

6 What are you doing tomorrow?  
 Subject question   
 Object question

7 Who did the police arrest?  
 Subject question   
 Object question





### 37.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Who **came** / ~~did come~~ into the office today?

- 1 Who **played** / **did play** golf with you yesterday?
- 2 What **saw you** / **did you see** at the movies last night?
- 3 Who **married** / **did marry** Sonia at the end of the movie?
- 4 What **caught you** / **did you catch** while fishing yesterday?



### 37.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

What **watched you** on TV last night?

What did you watch on TV last night?



- 1 Who **I saw** you playing golf with on Sunday?



- 2 Who **did stole** the money from the bank?



- 3 Who **did leave** this terrible mess?



- 4 What **you are going** to wear to the wedding?



- 5 Who in that huge castle **lives**?



- 6 What **you did give** the cat to eat?



- 7 Who the race **won** this afternoon?



# 38 Indirect questions

Indirect questions are more polite than direct questions. They are very common in formal spoken English, particularly when asking for information.



## 38.1 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

is library where the

Could you tell me where the library is ?

the begins what time lesson

1 Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?

bus where is the station

2 Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?

get to how gallery to the national

3 Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ ?

costs ticket a Oslo to much how

4 Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?

still if served breakfast being is

5 Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ ?

is why so expensive this

6 Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ ?

train Swansea goes to the whether

7 Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?



### 38.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Do you know when does the supermarket open?

Do you know when the supermarket opens?

① Could you tell me where Lizzy lives?

Could you tell me where does Lizzy live?

② Do you know why is the school closed?

Do you know why the school is closed?

③ Do you know has the course begun yet?

Do you know if the course has begun yet?

④ Could you tell me why you did that?

Could you tell me why did you do that?



### 38.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Do you know why are you in trouble?

*Do you know why you are in trouble?*



① Do you know has Emma brushed the yard?



② Could you tell me whose is that old car?



③ Do you know will the car be ready by 5pm?



④ Could you tell me where is the station?



⑤ Do you know when will you finish the report?





# 39 Question tags

In spoken English, small questions are often added to the ends of sentences. These are called question tags, and they are most often used to invite someone to agree.



## 39.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT QUESTION TAGS

	It's a lovely day today,	→	isn't it?
1	Brian was a Spanish teacher,		wasn't he?
2	Mark is Mike's cousin,		isn't he?
3	There aren't any tickets left,		wasn't it?
4	There's a nice café near the park,		is it?
5	That was such an exciting movie,		are there?
6	It's not going to rain today,		isn't there?



## 39.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE QUESTION TAGS IN THE PANEL

I could become a lawyer, <u>couldn't I?</u>	4 Carla worked in a bakery, _____
1 Your grandmother likes tea, _____	5 We should buy a new fridge, _____
2 Gerald has finished the gardening, _____	6 You haven't seen my glasses, _____
3 Luca didn't pass the English exam, _____	7 Mike can swim, _____

<del>couldn't I?</del>	shouldn't we?	have you?	can't he?
didn't she?	did he?	hasn't he?	doesn't she?



### 39.3 ADD QUESTION TAGS TO THESE SENTENCES



The photocopier shouldn't do that, should it ?

1



The hat on the left is gorgeous, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

2



That ride was really scary, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

3



You're Daniel's cousin, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

4



I think our team's going to win, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

5



We aren't going to catch our plane, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

6



You've read that book before, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

7



The guests don't look very happy, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

8



Bill plays the guitar really well, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

9



Chloe will do the shopping for you, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

10



I should have brought an umbrella, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

11



Martin doesn't like cooking much, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

12



Paul looks absolutely exhausted, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

13



We've been waiting here for 30 minutes, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

14



You're not listening to anything I say, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

# 40 Short questions

Short questions are a way of showing interest during conversation. They're used to keep conversation going, rather than to ask for new information.



## 40.1 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

I study every evening after work.



Are you?

Do you?

5

Martha saw a cat in the garden earlier.



Did she see?

Did she?

1

The chef cooks the most amazing dishes.



Does he?

Doesn't he?

6

Ola is teaching us math next year.



Does she?

Is she?

2

I just saw a mouse under the bed!



Saw you?

Did you?

7

Andrew still hasn't found his dog.



Hasn't he?

Has he?

3

My company isn't doing very well.



Isn't it?

Doesn't it?

8

It was raining all the time we were in Paris.



Was it?

Did it?

4

We've just come back from New York.



Have you?

Are you?

9

Liam's going rock climbing on the weekend.



Goes he?

Is he?



# 41 Short answers

When answering closed questions in English, some words can often be left out to make responses shorter. These short answers are often used in spoken English.



## 41.1 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

Do you like being a chef?



Yes, I am.

Yes, I do.

Are you going on vacation?



Yes, we do.

Yes, we are.

1 Is there a library in your town?



Yes, it is.

Yes, there is.

4 Were there many people at the meeting?



Yes, there were.

Yes, there did.

2 Do you know where the tickets are?



No, I don't.

No, they don't.

7 Can Jamie play badminton?



Yes, he can.

Yes, he plays.

3 Will you visit the castle while you're there?



No, we don't.

No, we won't.

8 Have you got a large black cat?



No, I haven't.

No, I haven't got.

4 Do you own this amazing house?



Yes, I own.

Yes, I do.

9 Would you like an ice cream?



No, I wouldn't.

No, I don't.

# 42 Questions review

Questions in English are formed in different ways depending on the main verb. Open and closed questions are formed differently, and spoken with different intonation.



## 42.1 REWRITE THE STATEMENTS AS QUESTIONS

Helen went to Sydney last year.

*Did Helen go to Sydney last year?*



1 Joe's playing tennis on Thursday.



2 They've knocked down the apartment block.



3 Jean-Paul is learning to cook.



4 Rob is going to win the race.



5 Chrissy does exercises each morning.



6 They will play all their greatest hits.



7 Claire and Ben got married last week.



8 Aziz works late every evening.



9 Jessica took the dog for a walk.





## 42.2 WRITE THE QUESTIONS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

### SUBJECT QUESTIONS

*Who wrote this book?*

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

Who did you invite?

Who do you live with?

What does John do for work?

What happened next?

What did you buy?

~~Who wrote this book?~~

Who called earlier?

Who drove you to work?



## 42.3 MARK WHETHER EACH QUESTION IS AN OPEN QUESTION OR A CLOSED QUESTION

Where did you put my phone charger?

Open question



Closed question



① What are you going to buy at the supermarket?

Open question



Closed question



② Would you like to go see a jazz concert with me tonight?

Open question



Closed question



③ Have you already finished your final assignment?

Open question



Closed question



④ Why did you decide to study environmental science at college?

Open question



Closed question



⑤ Did your brother really make that delicious dinner we just ate?

Open question



Closed question



⑥ Shall we go ice skating again tonight? I enjoyed it last time.

Open question



Closed question





# 43 Reported speech

The words that people say are called direct speech. Reported speech is often used to describe what someone said at an earlier point in time.



## 43.1 MATCH THE DIRECT SPEECH SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT REPORTED SPEECH

You look very happy today!

She said her husband was from Alabama.

1 I want to come to the park with you.

He told me I looked very happy today.

2 My husband is from Alabama.

She told me that she was a lawyer.

3 It is extremely hot in Adelaide.

Our boss told us we had to work harder.

4 I'm a lawyer.

Emilia said she wanted to come to the park with us.

5 I want to quit school.

They told me they owned a villa in Spain.

6 You have to work harder.

He said it was extremely hot in Adelaide.

7 We own a villa in Spain.

My son said he wanted to quit school.



### 43.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



They said that there was a big carnival today.



They said me that there was a big carnival today.



1 She told me she was a Canadian citizen.



She said me she was a Canadian citizen.



2 Rob said me he had won a huge amount of money.



Rob said he had won a huge amount of money.



3 Ella said that Phil's 18th birthday party was great fun.



Ella told that Phil's 18th birthday party was great fun.



4 Ted told me he went backpacking around Europe last year.



Ted told he went backpacking around Europe last year.



### 43.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING REPORTED SPEECH, PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

I want to buy a new basketball.

He told (tell) me that he wanted (want) to buy a new basketball.

1 I travel around the world a lot for work.

She \_\_\_\_\_ (say) that she \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) around the world a lot for work.

2 My new boyfriend is from Ethiopia.

She \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me that her new boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_ (be) from Ethiopia.

3 I live in Milan with my family.

Silvio \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) Maria that he \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Milan with his family.

4 I feel sick, so I'm going home.

Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (say) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) sick, so he went home.

5 My brother works in a travel agency.

She \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me that her brother \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a travel agency.

# 44 Tenses in reported speech

In reported speech, the reported verb usually “goes back” a tense. Time and place references and pronouns sometimes also change.



## 44.1 MARK THE BEST REPORTED SPEECH EQUIVALENT TO EACH DIRECT SPEECH SENTENCE

It is raining very heavily.

Shaun said it rained very heavily.

Shaun said it was raining very heavily.

1 I'll give you a call later tonight.

Jan said she would give me a call later that evening.

Jan said she gave me a call later that evening.

2 I'm seeing my grandma later today.

Benedict said he saw his grandma later that day.

Benedict said he was seeing his grandma later that day.

3 I arrived at the hotel hours ago.

George told me he'd arrived at the hotel hours earlier.

George told me he would arrive at the hotel hours later.

4 We're going to the movies to see the new thriller.

Matt and Mabel said they had gone to the movies to see a thriller.

Matt and Mabel said they were going to the movies to see a thriller.

5 I can't afford to come on vacation with you this summer.

Danny said he didn't afford to come on vacation with us this summer.

Danny said he couldn't afford to come on vacation with us this summer.

6 Your new dress looks great.

Gemma told me that my new dress looks great.

Gemma told me that my new dress had looked great.

7 I'll give the camera back to you tomorrow.

Katie said she had given the camera back to me the next day.

Katie said she'd give the camera back to me the next day.





## 44.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Malcolm told Mel that he works in a salon.

George and Tamsin told me they go on vacation a lot.

Archie told me that his car had broken down.

Betty said she'd seen a wolf in the woods last year.



## 44.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Christopher told me that he **will** call me yesterday.

*Christopher told me that he would call me yesterday.*



1 Cath told me she **has** posted the letter a few days ago.



2 The weather forecast said it **is** going to be sunny yesterday.



3 Angela told me she **was** already mowed the lawn.



4 Miles told us that the company **is** losing money before it went bankrupt.



5 In February, Lisa told me that she **has** had a great idea for a vacation.



6 Emil said he **will** visit me in Japan that summer.





#### 44.4 MATCH THE DIRECT SPEECH SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT REPORTED SPEECH

An engineer will come to your house tomorrow.

The shop assistant told me they didn't have a shirt in my size.

1 We're going to the zoo on Thursday.

They told me an engineer would come to my house the following day.

2 We don't have a shirt in your size, sorry.

The manager said the hotel was fully booked in July.

3 I don't want to go to the party tonight.

Harry told me they were going to the zoo on Thursday.

4 I'm afraid the hotel's fully booked in July.

Michelle said she didn't want to go to the party last night.

5 I worked on a farm when I was a student.

Billy's mom said he would pass all his exams.

6 Billy will pass all his exams this summer.

She said that she lives in a house near the bus station.

7 I'm writing a novel set in Ancient Rome.

Jenny told me that she'd worked on a farm when she was a student.

8 I live in a house near the bus station.

Carlo said he was going to buy a new car that afternoon.

9 I'm going to buy a new car this afternoon.

Robert told me he was writing a novel set in Ancient Rome.

# 45 Reporting verbs

In reported speech, "said" can be replaced with a wide variety of verbs that give people more information about how someone said something.



## 45.1 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

she that admitted

Katrina admitted that she didn't understand the question.

me buy to reminded

1 Don reminded me to buy some milk on the way home.

study me encouraged to

2 My parents encouraged me to study medicine in college.

be explained would that she

3 Tina's sister explained that she would be late to the recital.



## 45.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Wayne admitted that it was the first time he'd made pancakes.

The customers explained that they had booked a room online.

Sergio asked me to marry him while we were on vacation.

Archie's boss threatened to fire him if he didn't work harder.



# 46 Reported speech with negatives

Negatives in reported speech are formed in the same way as negatives in direct speech. "Not" is used with the auxiliary, or with the main verb if there is no auxiliary.








## 46.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |                                   |                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|   | The weather report advised people | not to draw on the walls.       |
| 1 | Pedro explained that he           | not to forget my passport.      |
| 2 | Paul's mom told him               | not to travel during the storm. |
| 3 | Monika reminded me                | didn't work on Fridays.         |
| 4 | I said that I didn't want         | come because I was feeling ill. |
| 5 | I told my brother I couldn't      | to drive to the restaurant.     |



## 46.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |  |
|---|--|
|   |  My husband reminded me to don't be late for dinner. <input type="checkbox"/>     |
|   | My husband reminded me not to be late for dinner. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |
| 1 |  My colleague mentioned that the printer wasn't working. <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   | My colleague mentioned that the printer not working. <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| 2 |  Mark explained me that he didn't like dogs. <input type="checkbox"/>             |
|   | Mark explained that he didn't like dogs. <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| 3 |  Myra phoned to say that she not to come to the meeting. <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   | Myra phoned to say that she wasn't coming to the meeting. <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| 4 |  Jon tried to persuade me not to eat any more cake. <input type="checkbox"/>      |
|   | Jon tried to persuade me not eating any more cake. <input type="checkbox"/>  |

# 47 Reported questions

Reported questions are used to describe questions that someone has asked. Direct questions and reported questions use different word orders.

### 47.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

1  Dave asked if I'd like to go fishing with him.

2  Megan asked Simon if it was raining in Belfast too.

3  The artist asked us what we thought of his painting.

4  Georges asked me if I'd ever been to Paris.

5  My stylist asked me what I wanted.

6  Jon asked me why I was dressed as a clown.

7  The waiter asked me what I wanted to drink.

8  Mom asked if I'd done the dishes yet.

### 47.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Rick asked me **where I do work**.  
*Rick asked me where I work.*

1 He asked me **where do you live**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

2 Sue asked me **what did I think**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

3 Amy asked us **should she bring something**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

4 Paul asked **why did I leave**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

5 They asked me **where had I been**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

6 The girl asked me **where is the station**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

7 She asked **where was the exit**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

8 Mia asked me **do I own a car**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

9 They asked me **who is he**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_



### 47.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

me      what      asked

The officer asked me what my name was.

to      coming      were      if      you      the

1 Peter asked \_\_\_\_\_ performance later.

to      I'd      if      decided      me      asked

2 My teacher \_\_\_\_\_ study math in college.

I      to      me      go      where      wanted

3 Lou asked \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday.

if      order      we      wanted      to      asked

4 The waiter \_\_\_\_\_ more drinks.

time      me      we      usually      what      have

5 Susan asked \_\_\_\_\_ our lunch break.

wanted      go      if      to      I      the      to

6 She asked me \_\_\_\_\_ movies with her.

kids      wanted      her      they      if      mint      or

7 Claire asked \_\_\_\_\_ strawberry ice cream.

we      lived      how      had      in      long

8 Fran asked \_\_\_\_\_ San Francisco.

help      could      him      I      house      whether      move

9 Pete asked \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend.





## 47.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING REPORTED SPEECH, PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES

Are you studying physics or chemistry here?

He asked me whether I was studying (study) physics or chemistry there.

1 Can I borrow your T-shirt?

Paul asked if he \_\_\_\_\_ (can) borrow my T-shirt.

2 Is it raining where you are?

Danny wanted to know if it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) here.

3 Is Tim coming to the lecture later today?

Hiroshi asked whether you \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to the lecture later today.

4 Will you post this letter for me?

Shona asked me if I \_\_\_\_\_ (post) this letter for her.

5 How long have you been knitting for, Grandma?

My granddaughter asked me how long I \_\_\_\_\_ (knit) for.

6 Where is Silvio living at the moment?

Antonia asked me where you \_\_\_\_\_ (live) at the moment.

7 Who is the singer in this band?

Greg asked me who the singer \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the band we saw last night.

8 Do you know when you are going to finish the block?

I asked the architect if he knew when they \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the block.

9 Who won the marathon today?

Ella asked me who \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the marathon yesterday.

10 Do you believe in ghosts, Mom?

My children asked me today if I \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) in ghosts.

11 Who directed the new comedy?

Patsy wanted to know who \_\_\_\_\_ (direct) the new comedy.

# 48 Reported speech review

When forming reported speech from direct speech, some words change in order to keep the meaning consistent. Other words stay the same.



## 48.1 MATCH THE DIRECT SPEECH SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT REPORTED SPEECH

I am moving house next week.

Les told me Christine had paid for lunch the week before.

1 I really miss my friends and family.

Sanjay told me that he was moving house the following week.

2 Christine paid for lunch last week.

Jiya once told me she'd be a famous singer by 2015.

3 I really don't want to work this Saturday.

Steph told me that she really missed her friends and family.

4 My daughter dreams of becoming an actor.

Angela tells me she's never been to the Tower of London.

5 I'll be a famous singer by 2015.

Rohan tells me he really doesn't want to work this Saturday.

6 We're going to the theater tomorrow.

Mia told Dan that her daughter dreamed of becoming an actor.

7 I've never been to the Tower of London.

Lou told me they were going to the theater the following day.



## 48.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Fiona said me her son had done well in his exams.

Fiona said her son had done well in his exams.

1



Ruth explained why the results were so bad.

Ruth explained why were the results so bad.

2



Phil said he'll finish the garden last Wednesday.

Phil said he'd finish the garden last Wednesday.

3



Carla asked whether she could leave the office early.

Carla asked whether could she leave the office early.

4



Liam told me he had visited Paris the previous year.

Liam told me he has visited Paris the previous year.

5



Ken asked Katie did she want to dance with him.

Ken asked Katie if she wanted to dance with him.



## 48.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

vacation

they

year.

on

They

next

might

said

go

*They said they might go on vacation next year.*

1

for

she

her

Karen

going

me

Vietnam

told

was

honeymoon.

to

2

officer

a

was

police

when

a

wanted

he

kid.

Mike

be

to

said

he

3

she

mentioned

has

ticket.

Sophia

a

that

spare



# 49 Types of verbs

Verbs can be described as main verbs or auxiliary verbs.  
Main verbs describe actions, occurrences, or states of being.  
Auxiliary verbs modify the meaning of main verbs.



## 49.1 MARK WHETHER EACH VERB IS MAIN OR AUXILIARY



Unfortunately, nobody told Harry that the meeting time **had** changed.

Main  Auxiliary

1



Jen **called** a taxi to take her home from the supermarket.

Main  Auxiliary

2



Sally **had** been studying for her exams all day.

Main  Auxiliary

3



**Would** you like me to help you with your bag?

Main  Auxiliary

4



You **should** always do warm-up exercises before running.

Main  Auxiliary

5



I like to **listen** to the radio early in the morning.

Main  Auxiliary

6



Julio **plays** baseball with his friends after school.

Main  Auxiliary

7



They **had** just sold the last tickets for the show.

Main  Auxiliary

8



Mia **gave** her sister her birthday present.

Main  Auxiliary

9



Ella and Paul **are** buying an apartment together.

Main  Auxiliary

10



Ed **works** as a scientist at the university.

Main  Auxiliary



### 49.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE VERBS IN THE PANEL

My friends are very funny, you'd like them!

- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_ call your grandma. It's her birthday.
- 2 The students \_\_\_\_\_ all handed in their papers.
- 3 Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the party tonight.
- 4 My son \_\_\_\_\_ already swim when he was three.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ already left by the time Jim arrived.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ like her boyfriend. He was rude.
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ speak so loudly in the library.

have  
didn't  
had  
isn't  
mustn't  
~~are~~  
should  
could



### 49.3 FIND SIX MORE VERBS IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

G P N I D R A O B W T N S  
C A R R I V E G T A S N V  
N D E M J S R D S N M R D  
R I N T H R O W U T I U I  
S W G T X B A A R D L J G  
D G I V E Y D D F A E N X  
M Z L O U A O L I O R I Z  
P A Q E S N V A N S E S D  
T C D H T N D U G J A G I  
B R I N G R I G I E O S S  
R E Q E P S K H C O M E H  
A E C D E F X F I J J L M

#### TRANSITIVE

- give
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_

#### INTRANSITIVE

- laugh
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_

# 50 Action and state verbs

Verbs that describe actions or events are known as “action” or “dynamic” verbs, whereas those that describe states are known as “state” or “stative” verbs.



## 50.1 MARK WHETHER EACH VERB IS AN ACTION OR STATE VERB

One day, I **want** to be famous.

Action

State

1 We **play** soccer after school.

Action

State

2 I **like** your new blouse, Katie.

Action

State

3 Liam **goes** home at 4:30pm.

Action

State

4 Fay **cooks** wonderful meals.

Action

State

5 This cheese **tastes** a bit strange.

Action

State

6 Chiara **wants** to study art history.

Action

State

7 Rob **takes** the bus to work.

Action

State



## 50.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm **having** a cold at the moment.

I have a cold at the moment.

1 We **are knowing** Jenny very well.

\_\_\_\_\_

2 This soup **is tasting** awful.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Chris **is wanting** an ice cream.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Our vacation **was costing** a lot of money.

\_\_\_\_\_

5 Craig **is understanding** Spanish.

\_\_\_\_\_

6 I **was recognizing** that man.

\_\_\_\_\_

7 My son **is hating** vegetables.

\_\_\_\_\_

8 Dom's pie **was smelling** great.

\_\_\_\_\_

9 Your book **is sounding** interesting.

\_\_\_\_\_





### 50.3 WRITE THE VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

#### ACTION VERBS

*try*

#### STATE VERBS

drive

be

contain

hear

own

~~try~~

kick

know

eat

read



### 50.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Chrissy ~~doesn't want~~ / ~~isn't wanting~~ to go to work today.

1



Fatima ~~writes~~ / ~~is writing~~ a book about her childhood.

2



It ~~rains~~ / ~~is raining~~ outside. Let's watch something on TV.

3



Marco ~~plays~~ / ~~is playing~~ guitar on stage now.

4



Rosita ~~has~~ / ~~is having~~ two sisters, who live in the United States.

5



Claude ~~hates~~ / ~~is hating~~ all salad and vegetables.

6



I ~~read~~ / ~~am reading~~ a travel guide to Los Angeles.

# 51 Infinitives and participles

Infinitives and participles are forms of verbs that are rarely used on their own, but are important when making other forms or constructions.



## 51.1 WRITE EACH VERB IN ITS OTHER FORMS

	BASE FORM	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
	walk	walking	walked
1		planning	
2	play		
3		doing	
4		liking	
5			found
6			written
7	finish		
8			bought
9	read		
10			told
11			hoped
12	swim		
13			gone
14		crying	
15		beginning	
16			said
17		loving	



## 51.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PARTICIPLES IN THE PANEL

I have been waiting for a train for ages.

- 1 Carla has \_\_\_\_\_ all of her assignments.
- 2 Marsha's \_\_\_\_\_ a surprise party for Ed.
- 3 Marion is \_\_\_\_\_ to get married this fall.
- 4 We hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ to stay in, but it started raining.
- 5 We want \_\_\_\_\_ to the art exhibition tomorrow.

to go      planned

going      finished

~~waiting~~      planning



## 51.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I need help **chooseing** my college major. I can't decide!

*I need help choosing my college major. I can't decide!*



- 1 **Writting** new vocabulary in a notebook helps me remember it.



- 2 Tim's English teacher asked if he'd **donne** his homework.



- 3 My husband keeps **forgeting** his keys. It's so frustrating.



- 4 My children don't **want go** to school this morning.



- 5 I go **swiming** most weekends with my friends.



- 6 Everyone had **sang** Happy Birthday by the time I arrived.





# 52 Verb patterns

Some verbs in English can only go with a gerund or an infinitive. Some verbs can go with either. These verbs often describe wishes, plans, or feelings.



## 52.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



Penelope offered to help her friend move house.



3 We \_\_\_\_\_ to meet for a drink after work.



1 I finally \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a house after saving for years.



4 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ buying a sports car when he turned 40.



2 Alberto has \_\_\_\_\_ painting the landscape.



5 I really \_\_\_\_\_ meeting your friends at the party.

arranged

managed

considered

enjoyed

~~offered~~

finished



## 52.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

don't

too

running;

tiring!

I

like

it's

*I don't like running; it's too tiring!*

1 start Spanish. decided dad studying My to has

2 colleague help the My finish to report. me offered

3 really weekend. on enjoy I running the




## 52.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE




Brian was considering ~~to buy~~ / buying a new surfboard.

1  Carlo enjoys ~~going~~ / to go to the theater every Friday.

2  Rob and Phil intend ~~buying~~ / to buy a house this year.

3  Ellie is planning ~~visiting~~ / to visit Sydney while she's in Australia.

4  I don't feel like ~~playing~~ / to play football this evening.

5  Margo refused ~~eating~~ / to eat the ice cream Jed offered her.

6  My boss agreed ~~letting~~ / to let me go home early from work.



## 52.4 MATCH THE CORRESPONDING SENTENCES

We regret to inform you that you have not got the job.

I was driving home when I decided to stop for a cup of coffee.

1 I regret telling Jon about my new job. He's told everyone.

We have to tell you that you have not got the job, and we are sorry.

2 On the way back home, I stopped to have a cup of coffee.

I will remember to pick Angela up later from the airport.

3 I won't forget to pick Angela up from the airport.

I wish I hadn't told Jon about my job.

4 Do you remember meeting Paul at the conference last year?

The professor thanked the organizers and then talked about the experiment.

5 I stopped drinking coffee ages ago. I only drink tea now.

You were supposed to meet Paul. Did you remember to do that?

6 After thanking the organizers, the professor went on to talk about the experiment.

I used to drink coffee, but I decided to stop a long time ago.

7 Did you remember to meet Paul at the conference?

The professor was talking about the experiment and continued to do so.

8 I'll never forget seeing Angela at the airport for the first time.

Do you remember the time you first met Paul at the conference?

9 The professor went on talking about the experiment for hours.

I'll always remember when I saw Angela for the first time.



# 53 Verb patterns with objects

Some verbs, known as transitive verbs, have objects. When these verbs are followed by infinitives or gerunds, the object must come between the verb and the infinitive or gerund.



## 53.1 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



My teacher expects me to do a lot of homework.



My teacher expects me doing a lot of homework.



1



Alfred spends a lot of time playing golf after work.



Alfred spends a lot of time to play golf after work.



2



Janice watched the kids to play in the park.



Janice watched the kids playing in the park.



3



Marco tried sold his old car to me.



Marco tried to sell his old car to me.



4



My boss wants me working more quickly.



My boss wants me to work more quickly.



5



Helena heard people talking in the room next door.



Helena heard people to talk in the room next door.



6



My aunt borrowed a lot of money to my dad.



My aunt borrowed a lot of money from my dad.



7



My mom wants me clean my room immediately.



My mom wants me to clean my room immediately.



8



Hanif asked me to help him use the new software.



Hanif asked me helping him use the new software.



9



Yuri bought an ice cream for his girlfriend.



Yuri bought an ice cream to his girlfriend.



10



Tom reminded Peter buying some tickets for the concert.



Tom reminded Peter to buy some tickets for the concert.





## 53.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

Caroline son advice. her gave some

*Caroline gave her son some advice.*

1 keep parents room to clean. my My expect me

2 Gus's finish him boss early allows Fridays. on to

3 on the children Danny lawn. watched playing the

4 to my Don reminded grandmother. me phone

5 told walk The to principal more slowly. us

6 an becoming I Katie day. imagine actor can one

7 on summer Ravi beach. spent lying the his

8 friendly. to dog Eleanor more wants be her

9 from milk to Mona me the buy store. some asked

# 54 Verb patterns with prepositions

Some verb patterns include prepositions.  
Prepositions cannot be followed by infinitives,  
so these verb patterns only use gerunds.



## 54.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PREPOSITIONS IN THE PANEL

Stop worrying about what might happen tomorrow!

- 1 Emma is talking \_\_\_\_\_ quitting her job.
- 2 Ania finally admitted \_\_\_\_\_ stealing the jewelry.
- 3 My dad tried to prevent me \_\_\_\_\_ studying art in college.
- 4 Our company believes \_\_\_\_\_ doing the best possible job.
- 5 Frank apologized \_\_\_\_\_ forgetting my birthday.
- 6 I want to ask my tutor \_\_\_\_\_ doing the exam again.
- 7 We congratulated Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ winning the competition.
- 8 Paul objected \_\_\_\_\_ Danny eating a burger in the office.
- 9 We decided \_\_\_\_\_ buying a house in the country.
- 10 We're all looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ visiting you soon.
- 11 I need to concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ passing all my exams this spring.
- 12 Peter is worrying \_\_\_\_\_ his interview tomorrow.
- 13 The council banned people \_\_\_\_\_ taking dogs onto the beach.
- 14 Chloe accused me \_\_\_\_\_ stealing her idea for the presentation.
- 15 Leo's parents tried to stop him \_\_\_\_\_ marrying the girl he loved.

about      from      to      about      to      in      about      on  
of      ~~about~~      on      against      from      to      for      from



# 55 Phrasal verbs

Some verbs in English have two or more words in them, and usually have a new meaning when they are used together. These are called phrasal verbs.



## 55.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Tony works out at the local gym each evening.

1



I love chilling out by watching a funny movie and eating popcorn.

2



I've heard from Bill. He's got some shocking news.

3



It's taken me a long time to get over this cold.

4



My mother takes care of my sons on Fridays.

5



I meet up with my friends most weekends.

6



We checked into the hotel and went to our room.

7



I get along very well with my brother.



## 55.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- I've dress upped for the party.
- I've dressed up for the party.
- 1 Jen and Hugo eat out very often.   
Jen and Hugo eat very often out.
- 2 You should try it on before buying it.   
You should try on it before buying it.
- 3 The music was loud so I turned it down.   
The music was loud so I turned down it.
- 4 I've always looked up to my brother.   
I've always up to my brother looked.
- 5 We've run out milk of.   
We've run out of milk.
- 6 We checked into the hotel at noon.   
We checked the hotel into at noon.
- 7 Rob meets up with Nina on Fridays.   
Rob meet ups with Nina on Fridays.
- 8 Does Pete always shows up on time?   
Does Pete always show up on time?
- 9 I was annoyed because he woke up me.   
I was annoyed because he woke me up.
- 10 I'm staying in to watch the game tonight.   
I'm in staying to watch the game tonight.
- 11 Sharon hand inned her essay early.   
Sharon handed in her essay early.
- 12 The caterpillar turned into a butterfly.   
The caterpillar turned a butterfly into.
- 13 It's heavy. Please help me pick it up.   
It's heavy. Please help me pick up it.



## 55.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

- If you drop litter, pick up it.  
*If you drop litter, pick it up.*
- 1 Ramon is getting the flu over.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It was lovely from you to hear.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She told the children to down sit.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Here's your coat. Put on it please.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We need to check the hotel into.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I spotted a coin and picked up it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Riku up gets at 9:30am on Saturdays.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The baby's crying. You woke up him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I love cooking so I don't out eat often.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 The café has out run of coffee.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 11 Femi up grew in New York.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 12 The airplane take offs in one hour.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## 55.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

forward I'm seeing tomorrow. you looking to

*I'm looking forward to seeing you tomorrow.*

1 most work I gym in evenings. the out

2 up Camila to teacher. really her looks English

3 after father. Rachel her takes

4 to It's so up hard Libby. keep with

5 more. some We I ran of out so made food

6 were I when on didn't with get we brother young. my

7 got trip We to from Wales our Thursday. on back

8 I up the get later usually on weekend.

9 down. car My breaking is dad's always





### 55.5 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

#### SEPARABLE

---



---



---



---

#### INSEPARABLE

*do without*

---



---



---



---

get through   turn on   fill up   come across   go over   ~~do without~~   throw away   wake up



### 55.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Our business is not doing well, so we have had to make a lot of cutbacks.

- 1 A break on the coast sounds like the ideal \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There has been another \_\_\_\_\_ of the disease in the city.
- 3 The café was a \_\_\_\_\_! We paid \$20 for a bowl of soup.
- 4 After the \_\_\_\_\_, the sun came out again.
- 5 It's important to make a \_\_\_\_\_ of any work you do.
- 6 There have been so many \_\_\_\_\_ from the course this year.
- 7 All the students were given a \_\_\_\_\_ with important information.
- 8 Following her \_\_\_\_\_ with Charlie, Ola was very unhappy.
- 9 We haven't had \_\_\_\_\_ like this for years. There's snow and ice everywhere.

downpour   snowfall   getaway   break-up   rip-off  
handout   ~~cutbacks~~   dropouts   outbreak   backup

# 56 Modal verbs

Modal verbs are very common in English. They are used to talk about a variety of things, particularly possibilities, obligations, and deductions.



## 56.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

you me Could where is? library tell the

*Could you tell me where the library is?*

1 learn computer. You a should to how use

2 cake? Could piece have another I of

3 run corridor. the You not in must

4 languages My fluently. sister four can speak

5 I Can with give you shopping? a hand your

6 moment? your lend Could pen you me a for

7 be from That must letter college. Ken's



## 56.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Can I get you a drink?

Maybe I should call my mother.

Can I help you with your bag?

You mustn't be late for work again.



## 56.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES AS QUESTIONS

Simon can speak Irish fluently.

*Can Simon speak Irish fluently?*

1 I can help you clean up.

---

2 Phil should study math in college.

---

3 Graham can play the violin.

---

4 Peter has to go to the meeting.

---

5 She can have another chocolate.

---

6 Angela could drive us to the party.

---



## 56.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE NEGATIVE

Students must bring a calculator.

*Students must not bring a calculator.*

1 Leroy can repair your oven.

---

2 My grandma could speak Welsh.

---

3 You should eat more red meat.

---

4 Louisa can swim well.

---

5 Students have to wear uniforms.

---

6 You can have another piece of cake.

---



# 57 Ability

"Can" is a modal verb that describes what someone is able to do. It is used in different forms to describe past and present abilities.

## 57.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Emma can make beautiful dresses.



Tina can dance really well.



Chris can repair your car.



Jamie can't lift that box. I'll help him.



I can't solve this. It's too difficult.



Rita can cook the most amazing dishes.



Chloe can speak three languages.



I can't climb that mountain.

## 57.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES IN THE CORRECT ORDER

box. can't I that reach

*I can't reach that box.*

1 the Jonathan can guitar. play

2 can't We door. open the

3 well. really can Amy sing

4 Lizzie car. cannot a drive

5 can trees. Femi climb

6 languages. can five speak Marion

7 that piano. Derek can't move



### 57.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I couldn't buy a new laptop	→	make wonderful cakes.
1	My grandmother could		You need a new one.
2	I couldn't fix your phone.		because they were too expensive.
3	When I was a child,		because I felt ill.
4	Martha could play the piano		I could run much faster.
5	I couldn't come to the party		Jen could already speak six languages.
6	When she was six,		when she was four years old.




### 57.4 MATCH THE PRESENT SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT FUTURE SENTENCES

	I can play most of this piece now.	→	I'll be able to speak it fluently by the summer.
1	I can already speak some Spanish.		I'll be able to play the whole thing by next week.
2	I can't find my passport.		In the future, we'll be able to travel to other planets.
3	We can already travel to the moon.		I'm hoping I will be able to fix it soon.
4	I still haven't been able to repair your old clock.		I won't be able to take my flight without it.

# 58 Permission, requests, and offers

"Can," "could," and "may" are used to ask permission to do something or to ask someone to do something for you. They can also be used to offer to help someone.

 **58.1 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS FORMAL OR INFORMAL**

Could you be quiet, please?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

1 Could you tell me where the bank is, please?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

2 Can I play outside now?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**


3 May I introduce my sister, Kay?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

4 Can I have some more cake?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

5 Could you turn down the radio, please?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

6 May I go home earlier today?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

7 Can I sit here?  
**Formal**   
**Informal**

 **58.2 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE IS A REQUEST OR AN OFFER**

Can I help you at all?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

1 May I make a reservation for 8pm?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

2 Can I offer you something to eat?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

3 Can you lend me 10 dollars?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

4 Can I get you something to drink?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

5 Can you help me with this report?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

6 May I leave the table, please?  
**Request**   
**Offer**

7 Shall I take your coat for you?  
**Request**   
**Offer**





### 58.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



May I take your order?

Shall I open the door for you?

Shall I carry it for you?

Can I take your coat?



### 58.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Can my husband comes to the party, too?

*Can my husband come to the party, too?*



① Could sit I here, please?



② I may make an appointment, please?



③ Could I having a piece of your pizza?



④ I can get you something to drink?



⑤ Can have I the chicken and a salad, please?



⑥ Could you to tell me the way to the museum?



## 59

## Suggestions and advice

The modal verb “could” can be used to offer suggestions. “Could” is not as strong as “should.” It communicates gentle advice.



## 59.1 MATCH THE SITUATIONS TO THE CORRECT ADVICE

It looks like it's very cold outside.

You should take it out for a walk.

1 My dog keeps barking. It's so irritating.

You should wear a coat and some gloves.

2 It's really hot and sunny outside.

You should try talking to a native speaker.

3 I want to learn how to speak good English.

You should put on some sunscreen.

4 My son doesn't have many friends.

She should try to relax before bed.

5 My wife can't sleep at night.

He should join a club or take up a hobby.

6 I don't know what to buy my girlfriend.

You should go home and get some sleep.

7 My cousin wants to lose some weight.

You could make a little card for her as a gift.

8 I'm not feeling well at all.

You should try to save money regularly.

9 I can't afford to go on vacation this summer.

He should eat less cake and exercise more.



## 59.2 REWRITE THE ADVICE USING "HAD BETTER" OR "HAD BETTER NOT"

You ought to leave now, or you'll miss the bus.

*You had better leave now, or you'll miss the bus.*

1 It's going to rain. You should take an umbrella.

---

2 The train's been canceled. We ought to take a taxi.

---

3 It's icy outside. You shouldn't drive tonight.

---

4 I'm late for the meeting. I should call my boss.

---



## 59.3 MARK THE BEST ADVICE TO EACH SITUATION

I'm late for the meeting!



You should hurry up!



You should eat something.



1 I want to keep fit.



If I were you, I'd watch more TV.



If I were you, I'd try jogging.



2 What should I visit in your town?



You really must visit the castle.



You should turn left at the hotel.



3

My hair is getting much too long.



You ought to go on vacation more.



You ought to go to the barbershop.



4

My son wants to get a pet that's easy to look after.



He could get a dog. He'll need to walk it twice a day.



He should get a cat. They're quite independent.



5

What should I wear for the party tonight?



You could wear jeans and shirt.



You should buy some balloons.





# 60 Obligations

In English, "have to" or "must" are used when talking about obligations or things that are necessary. They are often used to give important instructions.



## 60.1 MATCH THE SITUATIONS TO THE CORRECT OBLIGATIONS

My eyesight is absolutely terrible.

You have to go. It's about the new IT system.

1 There's a meeting in 10 minutes, but I'm too busy.

You really must go to the optician.

2 I've just remembered it's my grandmother's birthday today.

Yes. All our workers must wear a helmet at all times.

3 I've got too much homework to do.

The council must do something to stop people from littering.

4 I'm feeling much better now. The pain has gone.

You must call her right away!

5 There's so much litter in town.

He had to go home because his daughter's unwell.

6 Why are you driving so slowly here?

You won't have to do any when the summer break comes!

7 I forgot to bring my helmet. Does it matter?

You must not lift anything heavy for two weeks.

8 Why isn't Juan at the meeting today?

In that case, you don't have to take your medication any longer.

9 I hurt my back while I was moving house.

I have to keep to the speed limit.



## 60.2 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING "MUST NOT" OR "DON'T HAVE TO"



You don't have to come swimming, but you are invited.

1



I \_\_\_\_\_ wear a suit for work, but I wear one anyway.

2



I'm staying in bed because I \_\_\_\_\_ go to work today.

3



You \_\_\_\_\_ stay in the sun too long. You'll get burned.

4



You \_\_\_\_\_ touch that pan. It's hot.

5



You \_\_\_\_\_ be great at tennis to enjoy it.

6



I have a secret, but you \_\_\_\_\_ tell anyone else.



## 60.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES IN THE FUTURE

Students must use a laptop.

Students will have to use a laptop.

1 Everyone must leave before 5pm.

\_\_\_\_\_

2 You must inform your manager.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Brenda has to go home early today.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 She must pay for the damage.

\_\_\_\_\_



## 60.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES IN THE PAST

Joe must come in early.

Joe had to come in early.

1 The managers must apologize.

\_\_\_\_\_

2 Greg must eat all the broccoli.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Joe has to work very hard today.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 I must rest all this week.

\_\_\_\_\_

# 61 Making deductions

Modal verbs can also be used to talk about how likely or unlikely something is. They can be used to guess and make deductions about what has happened or is happening now.

**61.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES**

1 Look! Janet must have passed her driving test.

2 There's no answer. George must be out.

3 He can't be the plumber. He's wearing a suit.

4 It looks like Sam could win this race.

**61.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE**

Dan has been off work for days. He **must** / ~~cannot~~ be sick.

- Alina drank all the water. She **must** / ~~can~~ have been really thirsty.
- I can't read this. I **could not** / ~~might~~ need new glasses.
- Ben ~~can't~~ / **might** have stolen the vase. He was with me last night.
- The journey home takes ages. The children **must** / ~~can~~ be so bored.
- I can't find my wallet. I **must** / ~~can't~~ have dropped it somewhere.





### 61.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

It's freezing in this house! The heating must have broken.

1 I can't find my purse. I on have it might left the bus.

2 I keep sneezing. I think a have I might cold.

3 Veronika is crying. She failed have her must test.

4 What's that animal with brown fur? It bear be could a.



### 61.4 MATCH THE CORRESPONDING SENTENCES TOGETHER

I haven't heard from Kate today.

That must be so interesting.

1 Jon works for the local zoo.

It must have cost a lot of money.

2 What was that noise?

She might have lost her phone.

3 Ivana's driving a brand-new sports car.

You can't have followed the recipe properly.

4 Mabel's team lost the match.

There might be a burglar downstairs.

5 The cake I made tastes horrible.

She can't be feeling very happy.

# 62 Possibility

Modal verbs can be used to talk about possibility, or to express uncertainty. "Might" is the most common modal verb used for this purpose.



## 62.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



The weather forecast said it might rain on Saturday.



4 I can't find my keys. I \_\_\_\_\_ them at work.



1 It looks like my team \_\_\_\_\_ tonight's game!



5 If you don't hurry, you \_\_\_\_\_ the deadline!



2 I \_\_\_\_\_ some driving lessons if I can afford them.



6 I think we \_\_\_\_\_ lost. We'd better ask someone.



3 I think the train \_\_\_\_\_ canceled.



7 I \_\_\_\_\_ the building by the end of the year.

might take

might not finish

might win

might have left

might be

~~might rain~~

might have been

might miss



## 62.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Irene said she might goes to the theater tonight.

Irene said she might go to the theater tonight.

1 I might have forget to turn off the iron.

I might have forgotten to turn off the iron.

2 The forecast said it might snow later.

The forecast said it might snowing later.

3 Karl might not come to the party this evening.

Karl might come not to the party this evening.

4 Jon may have gone away for the weekend.

Jon can have gone away for the weekend.



## 62.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

not

door

I

locked

earlier.

might

have

the

*I might not have locked the door earlier.*

1 not

be

the

I

come

might

to

able

movies.

to

2

zoo

might

the

I

go

next

to

weekend.

3

Sue

delayed

traffic.

might

of

be

the

because

4

later.

might

like

It

looks

it

rain



# 63 Articles

Articles are short words which come before nouns to show whether they refer to a general or a specific object. There are several rules telling which article, if any, should be used.



## 63.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

There is ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ black cat in the garden. I wonder whose it is.

- 1 Russia is ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ huge country. It took me seven days to cross it by train.
- 2 While hiking in Scotland, I spotted ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ eagle soaring above us.
- 3 Bill took me on ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ date to ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ most expensive bar in town.
- 4 Where can you get ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ good cup of coffee in ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ evening?
- 5 ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ food in Italy was absolutely delicious.
- 6 When I was ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ child, I wanted to be ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ actor.
- 7 ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ first train to Madrid leaves at 4:30 from platform 4.
- 8 It's going to rain this evening. Don't forget to take ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ umbrella.
- 9 Do you live in ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ house or ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ apartment?
- 10 I saw ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ wolf and ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ bear in Canada. ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ bear was catching fish.
- 11 Neil Armstrong was ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ first man to set foot on ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ moon.
- 12 Last week, I went to see ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ show with my cousin.
- 13 My brother used to be ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ chef. He's ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ optician now.
- 14 While I was in Rome, I visited ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ Colosseum.
- 15 ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ cakes in that bakery are ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ best in town.
- 16 I had ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ cup of coffee and ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ croissant. ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ coffee was cold, though.
- 17 Is there ~~a~~ / ~~an~~ / ~~the~~ good hotel where I can stay in your town?
- 18 ~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / ~~The~~ book that I just finished was really interesting.



### 63.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING PLURALS

There **is a book** on the table.

*There are some books on the table.*

1 **There's a mug** in the dishwasher.

2 I have **a pencil** here.

3 **There's a sandwich** for you.

4 Mary has **a beautiful dress**.

5 Hassan caught **a big fish**.

6 **There's a café** in town.

7 There **is a watch** on the counter.

8 Marco climbed **a high mountain**.

9 **There's a bag** in the kitchen.

10 **There's a person** running outside.

11 There **is a big hotel** by the shore.

12 Ola sang **a beautiful song**.



### 63.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I don't have **some** pets.

*I don't have any pets.*

1 Clara works in **a** office.

2 Do you have **some** brothers or sisters?

3 There are **any** banks on my street.

4 There aren't **some** cookies in the cupboard.

5 Is there **the** hospital near here?

6 We visited **a** interesting exhibition today.

7 Are there **some** good restaurants nearby?

8 London is **the** very big city.

9 Is there **any** swimming pool in your town?

10 There aren't **some** students in the classroom.

11 There are **any** nice cafés near my house.

12 I tasted **a** best pasta while I was on vacation.



### 63.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>① The Eiffel Tower is one of</p> <p>② The president is visiting the</p> <p>③ The rich always complain</p> <p>④ The buildings in the</p> <p>⑤ The coffee served in this café</p> <p>⑥ I had a great trip, but</p> <p>⑦ The press were waiting</p>	<p>north of the country next week.</p> <p>capital are really beautiful.</p> <p>the most famous buildings in France.</p> <p>that they don't earn enough.</p> <p>outside the star's apartment.</p> <p>is the best in town.</p> <p>the weather was disappointing.</p>
---	--



### 63.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

does   always   Why   everyone   are   think   lazy?   students

*Why does everyone always think students are lazy?*

① when   in   Children   seven   start   school   are   country.   my   they

---

② the   school.   children   way   to   wanted   the   know   to   The

---

③ look   visit   Bears   to   often   yards   food.   for   people's

---

④ warned   Residents   flood   that   were   soon.   be   there   could   a

---





## 63.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Did you see letter that arrived for you this morning?

Did you see the letter that arrived for you this morning?

1



My sister-in-law is doctor at local hospital.

My sister-in-law is a doctor at the local hospital.

2



Perfume you bought for your wife is in my bag.

The perfume you bought for your wife is in my bag.

3



Try not to get water all over the bathroom floor.

Try not to get the water all over a bathroom floor.

4



I'm going to climb the highest mountain in my country.

I'm going to climb a highest mountain in my country.

5



You really should go to the bed. You're exhausted.

You really should go to bed. You're exhausted.

6



The food was excellent during our trip to Morocco.

Food was excellent during our trip to the Morocco.

7



Phone has been ringing all the morning.

The phone has been ringing all morning.

8



Is there the museum I can visit in your town?

Is there a museum I can visit in your town?

9



I rode an elephant when I visited India last year.

I rode the elephant when I visited India last year.

10



You might see lions while you're on safari.

You might see the lions while you're on safari.

11



Christopher has hot dog for the lunch every day.

Christopher has a hot dog for lunch every day.

12



I ride my bike to the office each morning.

I ride my bike to office each morning.

13



Only rich people can afford to go to that restaurant.

Only the rich people can afford to go to that restaurant.

# 64 Articles review

The definite and indefinite articles are used in different situations, and this can depend on whether they are being used with a singular, plural, or uncountable noun.



## 64.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I'm sorry, but we don't have a reservation for **a / the** Peter Radley. Did you book the right dates?















- 1 It's so warm outside. I'm going to invite **some / the** friends over for a barbecue.
- 2 **The / A** new secretary seems good but doesn't have much experience.
- 3 I read **some / the** really good books during my last vacation.
- 4 What happened in **a / the** kitchen? It's such a mess.
- 5 **A / The** shirt Liam bought for **a / the** party cost more than \$80.
- 6 My cousin has **a / the** really friendly dog.
- 7 While walking in the park, I spotted **a / the** rare bird.
- 8 I have **a / the** lot of friends who still live with their parents.
- 9 Paula has left **a / some** money on **a / the** kitchen table for you.
- 10 I think Brazil would be **a / the** fascinating country to visit.
- 11 I've just baked **the / some** cupcakes. Would you like to try one?
- 12 **The / Some** cake you made for the fair was absolutely delicious.
- 13 My family's big. I have three brothers and **a / the** sister.
- 14 **A / The** blue whale is **a / the** biggest animal that has ever existed.
- 15 I asked **an / the** waiter for **a / the** large cup of coffee.
- 16 **A / The** saxophone is **a / the** difficult instrument to play.
- 17 India is **a / the** country I'd most like to visit.
- 18 We saw **a / the** bear on our trip through **a / the** mountains.



## 64.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT ARTICLES, LEAVING A BLANK FOR THE ZERO ARTICLE



I'm lost! I was supposed to get the bus to the Taj Mahal.

- 1  I don't go to \_\_\_\_\_ work on Fridays. I look after my daughter.
- 2  My son rides \_\_\_\_\_ bike to \_\_\_\_\_ school each day.
- 3  In my country, \_\_\_\_\_ people usually retire when they're about 60.
- 4  Colm works as \_\_\_\_\_ scientist at a large research center.
- 5  You should make sure you get plenty of \_\_\_\_\_ sleep before \_\_\_\_\_ exam tomorrow.
- 6  Irma buys her paint from the store by \_\_\_\_\_ café.
- 7  Bill got married to \_\_\_\_\_ woman he met at work.
- 8  \_\_\_\_\_ band I went to see last night was awful.
- 9  I'm still in touch with \_\_\_\_\_ friends I made while on \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.
- 10  My aunt thought she saw \_\_\_\_\_ wolf in the woods today.
- 11  \_\_\_\_\_ shoes I bought yesterday are far too big.
- 12  My mom says that \_\_\_\_\_ cats are much cleaner than \_\_\_\_\_ dogs.
- 13  While I was traveling in Australia, I saw \_\_\_\_\_ kangaroo.
- 14  \_\_\_\_\_ president gave \_\_\_\_\_ long speech at the conference.



# 65 "This / that / these / those"

"This," "that," "these," and "those" can be used as determiners before a noun to specify which noun is being talked about. They can also be used as pronouns to replace a noun in a sentence.



## 65.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

I really like ~~that~~ / those shoes.

- 1 This / These is my new boyfriend, Dan.
- 2 That / Those book is so interesting.
- 3 That / Those was such a tasty pizza!
- 4 I'd like that / those grapes, please.
- 5 Do you like this / these shirt?
- 6 I want to see that / those movie tonight.
- 7 This / These are your glasses right here.
- 8 Where did you buy that / those jeans?
- 9 Is this / these my cup of coffee?
- 10 That / Those shoes look great on you!
- 11 This / These is the perfect car for a family.
- 12 Is that / those your new motorcycle, Andy?
- 13 Who made this / these cakes?
- 14 This / These are my parents, Anna and Charles.
- 15 This / These wardrobe's so heavy!



## 65.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



That is my new house. It's just by the ocean.

That is a very nice painting. It looks great!

That was an amazing goal. You should have seen it!

This is your desk and computer.



### 65.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

delicious. apples absolutely red These taste

*These red apples taste absolutely delicious.*

1 boots suit you. really Those

2 of is best the one I've This read. books

3 I've I'm this seen sure before. movie

4 this don't is meat I properly. think cooked



### 65.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

These new computers are much faster

1 That is one of the most beautiful

2 I'll have a half kilo of those potatoes

3 Your most important role is

4 The cars we drive today are safer

5 I like these jeans here, but I prefer

6 This is the best coffee I've

and a bag of these apricots, please.

that of spokesperson for our company.

than those we used to have here.

castles that I've ever seen.

ever had. It's absolutely delicious.

than those our parents used to drive.

those with the stripe on them over there.

# 66 "No / none"

"No" and "none" both show the absence or lack of something. "No" is always used with a noun, whereas "none" replaces a noun in a sentence.



## 66.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I've missed the train again. I'm having no luck this week!

1



I'm sorry! I was going to make you a cup of coffee, but there's no milk left!

2



We wanted a room with a view, but the receptionist said that there were none available.

3



I wanted to order apple pie, but there was none left.

4



We had no time to make lunch, so we went out for burgers instead.

5



None of my friends believed I saw a ghost.

6



None of the clothes I tried on suited me.

7



I couldn't call you because there was no reception where I was.





## 66.2 WRITE EACH SENTENCE IN ITS OTHER FORM

I **don't have any** time for this.

*I have no time for this.*

- |   |   |   |                                      |
|---|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 |   | 2 | There <b>are no</b> free seats.      |
| 2 | I <b>don't have any</b> money left.           | 3 |                                      |
| 3 |   | 4 | There <b>were no</b> more tickets.   |
| 4 |   | 5 | Kinga <b>has no</b> friends at work. |
| 5 | It <b>doesn't take any</b> time to get there. | 6 |                                      |
| 6 | There <b>wasn't any</b> doubt that he did it. |   |                                      |



## 66.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I wanted some orange juice, but there was ~~no~~ / **none** in the fridge.

- 1 **No** / **None** vegetarian food had been ordered for the convention.
- 2 There are **no** / **any** places left on the English course.
- 3 **No** / **None** of the staff wanted to work on Saturdays.
- 4 Amelia wanted to buy salad, but there wasn't **any** / **none** in the store.
- 5 There was **no** / **none** time to think about the exam questions.
- 6 I called five hotels, but **no** / **none** had a free room for tonight.
- 7 There wasn't **no** / **any** milk left, so I went to the shops.
- 8 I had **no** / **none** energy left after work, so I watched some TV.
- 9 **No** / **None** of my friends wanted to see a movie with me.
- 10 There weren't **no** / **any** seats free on the train home.
- 11 I wanted to try one of Sarah's cakes, but there were **no** / **none** left.
- 12 **No** / **None** dentists were available to see me, so I went home.

# 67 "Each / every"

"Each" and "every" are words that go before singular nouns to refer to all members of a group of people or things.



## 67.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

in pyramids I Egypt. time every I the visit am

*I visit the pyramids every time I am in Egypt.*

1 and wife the David Poconos his every visit March.

2 the go Indian every I Monday. in to restaurant town

3 us a of was sandwich given Each and a drink.

4 Luis buys Every a coffee morning, before work.

5 for type shampoo works This of every hair.

6 member the was Each team given of a prize.

7 gave of Maddy dollars. each thousand a her children



## 67.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Our boss spoke to each employee in turn about the redundancies.

1



The burglar is tall and has two tattoos on each arm.

2



Each player was given a medal by the president.

3



I go hiking with my dog every summer.

4



Mona has a different type of earring in each ear.



## 67.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

The concert was incredible,

a present and some cake.

1

Our manager has spoken to

with one of my work colleagues.

2

We gave every child at the party

and each singer was extremely talented.

3

My sister loves jewelry and

each employee about the factory closing.

4

Every Thursday, I play golf

every kind of bread you can think of.

5

Oscar makes sure he does

had incredibly beautiful architecture.

6

The bakery near my house sells

wears a bracelet on each wrist.

7

Each city we visited in Spain

every one of her books.

8

Every time I hear that song, I

some exercise every morning.

9

I love that author. I've read

remember the first time I heard it.



# 68 "Either / neither / both"

"Either," "neither," and "both" are used in situations where two options are being described. They indicate that one, two, or none of the options are possible.



## 68.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I couldn't decide which suit I preferred, so I bought ~~either~~ / both of them.

1



~~Neither~~ / Either Dan nor Belinda could remember the way to the theater.

2



Both / ~~Either~~ of my brothers go hiking in the hills on the weekend.

3



~~Either~~ / Neither of us could resist another piece of cake.

4



Janet could afford to buy ~~neither~~ / either the skirt or the dress.

5



I invited ~~both~~ / either Sheila and Bill to my apartment in Paris.

6



~~Either~~ / Both Steve and Louis work really hard in their English class.

7



Let's eat out ~~neither~~ / either on Wednesday or Thursday.

8



~~Either~~ / Neither of the managers were at the meeting, unfortunately.

9



I had to take ~~either~~ / both the cat and the dog to the veterinarian.

10



Ramon can play ~~either~~ / both the electric and acoustic guitar.

11



Chetana didn't really like ~~either~~ / neither of the paintings on sale.



## 68.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Everything looks delicious. I'm going

1 Neither Gabriela nor Carlos came

2 My niece wants to be either an

3 Lisa wants both a puppy

4 Neither the apple pie nor

5 I want to see either an action film

6 Both my brother and sister

7 Neither the electricity nor the water

to the party last night.

the cheesecake appealed to my aunt.

to have either the steak or the fish.

still live with our parents.

actress or an accountant.

works properly in my new house.

and a laptop for her birthday.

or a comedy tonight.



## 68.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Neither the soup nor the other appetizers ~~is~~ / **are** ready yet.

1 Either my cousin or my parents **is** / **are** going to pick you up from the airport.

2 Neither Paula's car nor her bike **is** / **are** working properly.

3 I hope either the steak or the fish **is** / **are** on the menu today.

4 Both the food and the drink **was** / **were** really overpriced.

5 Neither my brother nor my sister **is** / **are** coming tomorrow.

6 Either a cat or a dog **makes** / **make** a great pet for a family.

7 Neither of us **wants** / **want** to go to the conference.

8 I don't really like either of the **dress** / **dresses** she bought.

9 Neither the boss nor the workers **was** / **were** pleased about the deal.

10 We're thinking about adopting both of the **puppy** / **puppies** we saw.

# 69 Singular and plural nouns

Nouns in English do not have a gender. They change form depending on whether they are singular, meaning there is one, or plural, meaning there is more than one.



## 69.1 MARK THE NOUN FROM EACH SENTENCE

It's a lovely day today, so let's go out.

lovely  day  so

1 Jim has just bought a second-hand car.

bought  second-hand  car

2 That castle looks like it's really old.

castle  like  really

3 Andrea asked me if I wanted to play chess.

asked  wanted  chess

4 I've just had the strangest thought.

just  strangest  thought

5 We walked past an incredible waterfall earlier.

walked  past  waterfall



## 69.2 FIND SIX MORE NOUNS IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

H	O	P	E	D	R	A	O	B	W	O	N	S
N	S	C	I	S	S	O	R	S	Q	E	N	V
N	E	F	M	C	T	U	N	R	Y	O	R	F
R	P	N	T	E	R	T	I	Y	T	C	U	L
J	T	A	O	E	O	R	A	N	G	E	N	O
U	E	W	W	R	Y	A	D	F	A	E	S	W
P	M	L	N	L	A	O	G	E	O	R	G	E
I	B	V	E	S	T	M	Q	E	R	I	A	R
T	E	D	H	T	N	D	E	G	J	A	K	I
E	R	I	J	F	R	A	N	C	E	O	E	S
R	E	C	E	P	Y	F	O	I	F	G	Y	D

### COMMON NOUNS

town

1

2

3

### PROPER NOUNS

France

4

5

6





### 69.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT NOUNS IN EACH SENTENCE



This is an excellent **book** / ~~books~~ / ~~bookes~~.

1



When I finished my dinner, I washed all the **dish** / **dishes** / **dishs**.

2



I bought my new **watch** / **watches** / **watche** in Switzerland.

3



A lot of **persons** / **peoples** / **people** were waiting on the platform.

4



We need to protect endangered **species** / **speciesses** / **speciess**.



### 69.4 WRITE EACH SENTENCE IN ITS OTHER FORM

The **child** **likes** ice cream.

*The **children** **like** ice cream.*

1

Tim asked to borrow the **dictionaries**.

2

The **train** always **leaves** on time.

3

The **woman** **was** talking about the past.

4

The mayor visited the **factories** in our city.

5

I think there are **some** **mice** in the kitchen.

6

That **story** **was** wonderful.

7

The **sheep** **were** standing in the road.

8

The **box** is full. We need to buy more.

9

Carla rested her **feet** on a cushion.

10

Ellie asked the **men** for directions.

11

Maria put her **baby** into the **cot**.

## 70

# Countable and uncountable nouns

In English, nouns can be countable or uncountable. Countable nouns can be individually counted. Objects that aren't counted are uncountable.



## 70.1 WRITE THE NOUNS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

### COUNTABLE

*question*

### UNCOUNTABLE

money

city

apple

~~question~~

knowledge

sugar



## 70.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Can you get me a carton of juice?

Would anybody like a glass of water?

Would you like a piece of cheese?

Is there a bag of rice in the pantry?



### 70.3 WRITE EACH SENTENCE IN ITS OTHER FORM

I **have some** paper here.

*I don't have any paper here.*

1 \_\_\_\_\_

There **isn't any** milk in the fridge.

2 I **bought some** eggs at the store.

3 We **saw some** bears in the mountains.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

There **isn't any** juice left.

5 \_\_\_\_\_

I **didn't get any** gifts for my birthday.

6 I **have some** fruit in my bag.

7 \_\_\_\_\_

We **don't have any** important information.

8 **There's some** rice in the cupboard.

9 \_\_\_\_\_

I **don't have any** money saved for the vacation.



### 70.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

How many bread do you need?

How much bread do you need?

1 How much meat is there?

How many meat is there?

2 How many cups of tea are there?

How much cups of tea are there?

3 How many coffee have you made?

How much coffee have you made?

4 How much bars of chocolate do we have?

How many bars of chocolate do we have?

5 How many jars of jam are there?

How much jars of jam are there?

6 How many juice will we need?

How much juice will we need?

7 How much milk is there?

How many milk is there?

8 How many bowls of cereal are there?

How much bowls of cereal are there?

9 How much bananas do you have?

How many bananas do you have?

10 How much bags of flour did you buy?

How many bags of flour did you buy?

11 How many cartons of milk are there?

How much cartons of milk are there?

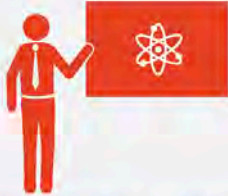


# 71 Subject-verb agreement

One of the basic principles of English is that subjects and verbs must agree in number. Some subjects, however, can act like singular or plural nouns depending on the context.



## 71.1 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



Physics is an extremely interesting subject in my opinion.



3 The United States \_\_\_\_\_ of more than 300 million people.



1 Athletics \_\_\_\_\_, such as running and the high jump.



4 Measles \_\_\_\_\_ that usually affects children rather than adults.



2 I think the news \_\_\_\_\_, but my parents always watch it.



5 *The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes* \_\_\_\_\_, I read it every summer.

is an illness

consists of a number of sports

is my favorite book

~~is an extremely interesting~~

is really boring

has a population



## 71.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Darts are a very popular game in some countries.

*Darts is a very popular game in some countries.*

- 1 The Netherlands are one of the world's biggest exporters of fresh flowers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Gymnastics weren't my first choice of sport.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *The Three Musketeers* have remained a popular novel since its publication in 1844.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Mathematics were my favorite subject when I was at school.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## 71.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

is in The this band summer. Rome performing

*The band is performing in Rome this summer.*

- 1 gets each Christmas. My together family usually  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 hired The of company managers. couple have new a  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 refusing details. any The reveal is to government  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 are work. staff after going meal All out the a for  
\_\_\_\_\_

# 72 Abstract and concrete nouns

Most abstract nouns are uncountable. Some, however, can be either countable or uncountable, and the two forms often mean slightly different things.



## 72.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

My English lessons are awesome,

but not enough money to develop them.

1 Pablo has so many qualifications,

and he's won three awards this year.

2 We had quite a bit of difficulty finding

and my teacher's always full of enthusiasm.

3 Chiara has great ideas,

but he has almost no experience.

4 Don's had plenty of success,

our way to the right block.



## 72.2 FIND SIX MORE NOUNS IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

G	G	N	I	D	A	R	B	Y	W	O	Q	H
N	S	E	F	L	O	V	E	T	Q	E	N	A
N	D	E	V	J	S	M	L	S	M	A	R	P
R	I	N	T	E	R	T	I	U	T	C	L	P
S	B	T	A	O	K	R	E	D	N	A	J	I
E	D	I	S	R	Y	E	F	F	T	R	N	N
M	Z	L	O	L	A	E	Z	I	O	H	I	E
P	E	N	C	I	L	V	O	N	S	E	N	S
T	I	M	E	T	N	D	X	G	J	A	G	S
E	H	I	O	A	Y	T	A	B	L	E	H	G

### CONCRETE NOUNS

pencil

1 \_\_\_\_\_

2 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

### ABSTRACT NOUNS

happiness

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_\_\_





## 72.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



This office is much too small! There isn't enough **room** / ~~rooms~~ for everyone.

1



I met people from many different **cultures** / **culture** at college.

2



After a lot of **thoughts** / **thought**, I've decided to quit my job.

3



Being able to play an instrument is a great **skill** / **skills** to have.

4



I've visited the museum a few **times** / **time** this year.

5



Don't give up **hopes** / **hope**! Your team might win.

6



I have a terrible **memory** / **memories** for people's names.

7



It takes a lot of **times** / **time** to learn a foreign language.

8



Venice is famous for its **culture** / **cultures** and history.

9



Trisha loves to share her **memory** / **memories** of the past.

10



There's a lot of **space** / **spaces** in my new apartment.

11



My uncle is always driving everywhere at high **speeds** / **speed**.

12



I made some lasting **friendships** / **friendship** while traveling.

13



There isn't enough **times** / **time** to finish the project.

# 73 Compound nouns

Compound nouns are two or more nouns that act as a single unit. The first noun(s) modifies the last, in a similar way to an adjective.



## 73.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



My mother-in-law had her birthday party in the town hall.



Two thieves had just carried out a bank robbery, but a policeman caught them before they could make their getaway.



I went to pick up my theater tickets from the ticket office.



During the heat wave, we kept the air-conditioning switched on all day.



Marc looked at the night sky as he relaxed on his camping trip.



Alberto stood at the front door, with his suitcase, waiting for the taxi.



As Ellie felt the first raindrops fall, she regretted not bringing a raincoat.



Sally had a terrible headache, so she asked her boyfriend to get her some painkillers.



### 73.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Meet me in the dining hall at lunchtime.

- 1 We've been waiting at this \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour.
- 2 Graham cleans his \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday morning.
- 3 I like your new \_\_\_\_\_, Ed. It looks great.
- 4 My \_\_\_\_\_ works in the main hospital.
- 5 You'll need a \_\_\_\_\_ for those drinks.

bathroom                      bus stop  
 sister-in-law                haircut  
~~dining hall~~                 bottle opener



### 73.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

this    enjoy    year?    Did    the    summer    you    party

*Did you enjoy the summer party this year?*

1 the    bookstore.    investigating    The    break-in    at    police    the    are

2 The    floor.    kitchen    teapot    the    onto    fell

3 drugstore.    the    bought    I    at    some    toothpaste

4 had    cereal.    sunrise    got    and    I    up    a    bowl    breakfast    at    of

5 his    birthday    for    Darren    a    bought    card    son.



# 74 Numbers

Cardinal numbers are used for counting and saying how many of something there are. Ordinal numbers give the position of something in an ordered list.

## 74.1 MARK WHETHER EACH NUMBER IS CARDINAL OR ORDINAL

sixth

Cardinal Ordinal 

④ three thousand

Cardinal Ordinal 

① seventy-two

Cardinal Ordinal 

⑤ thirty-fourth

Cardinal Ordinal 

② ninety-second

Cardinal Ordinal 

⑥ one-hundredth

Cardinal Ordinal 

③ one hundred and five

Cardinal Ordinal 

⑦ fourteen

Cardinal Ordinal 

## 74.2 WRITE EACH NUMBER IN ITS OTHER FORM

207

*Two hundred and seven*

① 9,000

② \_\_\_\_\_ *eight hundred and forty-eight*③ \_\_\_\_\_ *four hundred and seventeen*

④ 6,500

⑤ 958

⑥ \_\_\_\_\_ *ninety-seven*

⑦ 3,590

⑧ 359

## 74.3 MATCH THE FIGURES TO THE CORRECT TEXT

4,096,733

① 6,840,250

② 14,220,902

③ 90,310,000

fourteen million, two hundred and twenty thousand, nine hundred and two

four million, ninety-six thousand, seven hundred and thirty-three

ninety million, three hundred and ten thousand

six million, eight hundred and forty thousand, two hundred and fifty



## 74.4 MATCH THE FRACTIONS, DECIMALS, AND PERCENTAGES TO THE CORRECT TEXT

	<b>82%</b>	two-thirds
1	<b>12.5</b>	eighty-two percent
2	<b>27.5%</b>	six and three-quarters
3	$\frac{2}{3}$	two fifths
4	<b>32%</b>	twelve point five
5	$6\frac{3}{4}$	six point three four
6	<b>14.95</b>	twenty-seven point five percent
7	<b>19%</b>	eight and a third
8	$\frac{2}{5}$	thirty-two percent
9	<b>6.34</b>	fourteen point nine five
10	$8\frac{1}{3}$	eight and a half
11	<b>79.4%</b>	nineteen percent
12	$8\frac{1}{2}$	seventy-nine point four percent

# 75 Quantity

In English there are many ways to express general or specific quantities, say whether quantities are adequate, and compare different quantities.



## 75.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

A few people in my office work from home on Fridays.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ also have a part-time job.
- 2 Only \_\_\_\_\_ came to my barbecue on Saturday.
- 3 There are \_\_\_\_\_ performing tonight.
- 4 I sent \_\_\_\_\_ while I was traveling.
- 5 There is \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge if you want some.

some good bands

Lots of students    lots of juice

~~A few people~~    a few postcards

a few of my friends



## 75.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

This essay is due tomorrow; I don't have **enough** / ~~too many~~ time!

- 1 There **isn't** / **aren't** enough sugar to make a birthday cake.
- 2 The burger costs six euros? I'm afraid that's **enough** / **too much**.
- 3 Do we have **enough** / **too much** money to buy a car?
- 4 There are **too much** / **too many** people on the bus this morning.
- 5 There **isn't enough** / **is too much** chicken to make dinner for everyone.
- 6 I bought **too much** / **enough** fruit. Please take some!
- 7 **Is** / **Are** there enough orange juice in the fridge for breakfast?
- 8 There are only two seats left. There are **not enough** / **too many** of us here.





### 75.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I'm going traveling for a year because there are ~~few~~ / **a few** countries I'd like to visit.

1



**A lot of** / **A lot** people visit the mountains on the weekend.

2



I'm not rich, but I try to donate **little** / **a little** money to charity every month.

3



Sadly, there are **few** / **a few** Sumatran tigers left in the world today.

4



I met **quite a few** / **quite a bit of** new clients at the conference.

5



I have **little** / **a little** patience for people who are always late. I'm always on time!

6



There's **quite a bit of** / **quite a few** snow. Let's build a snowman!

7



**Lots** / **Lots of** people came to Craig's 40th birthday party.

8



Do you need some help with that report? I have **little** / **a little** time I can spare.

9



Be careful! That vase is worth **quite a bit of** / **quite a few of** money.

10



There are **few** / **a few** paintings in the museum I haven't seen. Can we stay a bit longer?

11



There are very **few** / **a few** people I would lend money to, but my brother is one of them.

12



I don't have lots of friends, but I've got **few** / **a few** who I'm really close to.



## 75.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "FEWER" OR "LESS"

There are much fewer entries for the competition than there were last year.

- 1 I spent \_\_\_\_\_ time on this essay than I did last time.
- 2 The lecture was almost empty. There were \_\_\_\_\_ than 10 students there.
- 3 I'm earning \_\_\_\_\_ money with my new job, but the conditions are better.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ people eat meat today in comparison with a decade ago.
- 5 The train leaves in \_\_\_\_\_ than half an hour. We should hurry!
- 6 There was much \_\_\_\_\_ traffic than usual on the way to work.
- 7 There are \_\_\_\_\_ than 5,000 black rhinos left in the wild.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ young people are studying languages than in the past.
- 9 It's \_\_\_\_\_ than 10 minutes' walk to the historic part of the city.



## 75.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The brighter the moon is, the fewer stars you can see at night.

The brighter the moon is, the fewer stars than you can see at night.

- 1 We didn't go shopping because we had enough money.   
We didn't go shopping because we didn't have enough money.
- 2 The weather was awful, but at least I made few friends there.   
The weather was awful, but at least I made a few friends there.
- 3 There is much less traffic in the city than 15 years ago.   
There is much fewer traffic in the city than 15 years ago.
- 4 A male African elephant can weigh more then seven tons.   
A male African elephant can weigh more than seven tons.
- 5 I received lot of presents for my 30th birthday.   
I received a lot of presents for my 30th birthday.



## 75.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

You should have **lots of career opportunity** once you graduate.

*You should have lots of career opportunities once you graduate.*



1 Marco was making **far too many noise**, so Ellie went out to the café.



2 I'm afraid it's bad news. Our company is making **fewer money than** it did last year.



3 Unfortunately, **very a little** can be done about the bad weather.



4 Do we have **pasta enough** to make lunch for all the family?



5 We have **lots things** to pack. Do you think there's room in the box?



6 **A few people** come to the restaurant on a Monday evening. It's almost empty.



7 There are **quite a bit of sandwiches** left. Help yourself to one!



8 There were a **lots of people** waiting on the platform for the train.



9 There were **a quite few clothes** I liked, but I didn't buy any.



10 **Less than 10 people** work for our company. It's very cozy here.



11 The safari park costs **fewer than \$5** to visit. It's a real bargain.



12 We have **quite a few time** before we need to leave.





# 76 Approximate quantity

If specific figures are known, it can be useful to give them. However, more general terms may be needed if figures are not known or to avoid repetition.



## 76.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT INSTRUCTIONS



Almost all our customers are happy with the service they receive.



Well over half of the houses in this new development have already been sold.



Just under a third of all people own a cat in my country.



About half of the students failed the exam this year.



## 76.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

In many cases, people don't realize

each month on my college course.

1 There are as many as two exams

consists of mountains and forests.

2 Well over half of the country

what they can and can't recycle.

3 Almost none of the money is left

can speak a second language.

4 Approximately 75% of Earth's

following the expensive carnival.

5 As many as 7 out of 10 people

surface is covered in water.



### 76.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

will as 1,000 There as be there. many people

*There will be as many as 1,000 people there.*

1 little be could as as months. You fluent two in in English

2 quickly poisoning. In from cases, most recover food people

3 almost eaten cakes. The the children have all

4 students exam. About final half failed the the

5 ten As applications in few one are as successful.

6 three-quarters use over of Well media. students social

7 cases, of to a go minority In prison. people

8 in are my as public There as many 25 city. parks

9 the away is My from house a just station. under mile

# 77 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns are used to replace nouns in a sentence. They can refer to people or things and have different forms depending on whether they are a subject or an object.

**77.1** WRITE EACH PRONOUN IN ITS OTHER FORM

	SUBJECT	OBJECT
	I	me
1	we	
2		you
3	he	
4		her
5	it	
6		them

**77.2** MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Sonja and me are going shopping.

Sonja and I are going shopping.

1 Kelly's so angry with he.

Kelly's so angry with him.

2 Paula asked me to marry her.

Paula asked I to marry her.


3 Do you know what happened to them?

Do you know what happened to they?

4 Mike gave she the money.


Mike gave her the money.

**77.3** MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES




I play soccer with my friends every weekend.

1




He wishes he was on vacation right now.

2



We visited Venice for our 20th wedding anniversary.

3



They went to the same music festival as last year.

A blue arrow points from the first picture to the second sentence.





## 77.4 MATCH THE CORRESPONDING SENTENCES

Rachel invited Paige and Scott to the heavy metal concert.

She saw him working in a shop in Edinburgh.

1 Jenny saw Andrew working in a shop in Edinburgh.

She invited them to the heavy metal concert.

2 Michael gave Peter and me a ride to the movie theater.

He offered her a flower.

3 Robert offered Angela a flower.

He gave us a ride to the movie theater.



## 77.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, REPLACING THE HIGHLIGHTED WORDS WITH THE CORRECT PRONOUNS

Darren gave Kate a necklace for her birthday, and **Kate** absolutely loved **the necklace**.

*Darren gave Kate a necklace for her birthday, and she absolutely loved it.*



1 Jane cooked a new dish, but **the dish** tasted awful. **Jane** was so disappointed.



2 Tom asked Roger to water the plants. **Roger** watered **the plants** and went home.



3 The commuters waited for the train. **The commuters** were angry because **the train** was delayed.



4 Mike told his parents he wanted to study drama. **His parents** thought that **drama** was a great choice.



5 Shona bought a coffee for Brian. **Brian** thanked **Shona** for buying **the coffee**.



# 78 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns show that the subject of a verb is the same as its object. They can also be used in other situations to add emphasis.



## 78.1 WRITE EACH PRONOUN IN ITS OTHER FORM

	OBJECT	REFLEXIVE
	me	myself
1	you (singular)	
2	you (plural)	
3		himself
4		herself
5	it	
6	us	
7		themselves



## 78.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PRONOUNS IN THE PANEL

She introduced \_\_\_\_\_ *herself* \_\_\_\_\_ to her new boss.

- I asked \_\_\_\_\_ if I should leave my job.
- You should pride \_\_\_\_\_ on your work, Phil.
- Did Daniel injure \_\_\_\_\_ when he fell off the wall?
- Ed and Flora are teaching \_\_\_\_\_ to cook.
- Sarah is preparing \_\_\_\_\_ for the interview.
- Did you and Claire enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ at the party?

herself    himself

yourself

themselves

~~herself~~    myself

yourselves



### 78.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I really need to pass this test, but I can't **concentrate** / ~~concentrate myself~~!

- 1 Tim **shaves** / **shaves himself** when he gets up in the morning.
- 2 Angela **cut** / **cut herself** while she was chopping the onions.
- 3 The door **opened** / **opened itself**, and my uncle walked into the room.
- 4 Chan **hurt** / **hurt himself** when he slipped on the ice.
- 5 Janet **feels** / **feels herself** better after her illness.



### 78.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We were told to take care of us while climbing the dangerous mountain.

We were told to take care of ourselves while climbing the dangerous mountain.

1



I baked the cake myself. I hope you like it.

I myself baked the cake. I hope you like it.

2



Most stores close at 5pm in my town.

Most stores close themselves at 5pm in my town.

2



Did the children behave himself during the class?

Did the children behave themselves during the class?

4



Annie asked Peter and myself to move the boxes.

Annie asked Peter and me to move the boxes.

5



The child sat by himself reading a book.

The child sat with himself reading a book.

6



How was the party? Did you enjoy?

How was the party? Did you enjoy yourselves?

7



We were talking to each other when the phone rang.

We were talking to ourselves when the phone rang.





## 78.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

president at will event. The be the herself

*The president herself will be at the event.*

1 paint going the My herself. wife house to is

2 before Carlos the admired in himself leaving. mirror

3 the herself to The clean CEO offered office. help

4 but evening. bad. the I the movie was enjoyed itself



## 78.6 MATCH THE CORRESPONDING SENTENCES

The engineers always help one

1 My grandpa is a carpenter and

2 My cats hate each other

3 Betty is very selfish and

4 My sister and I call each other

5 The children played in the park,

6 Lee and Ben are helping

only thinks about herself.

and fight almost every day.

another when there is a problem.

built this table himself.

throwing snowballs at one another.

each other with their homework.

every day to share the latest gossip.



## 78.7 FILL IN THE GAPS USING REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, LEAVING A BLANK IF ONE IS NOT NEEDED



Jennifer told herself that she would start eating more healthy food.

1



Sharon is teaching \_\_\_\_\_ how to knit.

2



It's hard to tear \_\_\_\_\_ away from a really good book.

3



Martin shaves \_\_\_\_\_ each morning when he gets up.

4



I made some tea while the cake baked \_\_\_\_\_ in the oven.

5



We found \_\_\_\_\_ in a strange part of town. We were lost.

6



My grandparents have convinced \_\_\_\_\_ to go swimming each day.

7



How was the fair? Did the children enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ there?

8



The truck started to reverse \_\_\_\_\_, so we moved out of the way.

9



I'm familiarizing \_\_\_\_\_ with the new software.

10



Jim and Ula are decorating their new house \_\_\_\_\_. It's so much cheaper.

11



My arm really hurts \_\_\_\_\_. I hope I haven't broken it.

12



Our café prides \_\_\_\_\_ on its excellent service.

13



I find it so hard to concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ with all that noise.

14



It looks like the weather is improving \_\_\_\_\_. Let's go out.

# 79 Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns, such as “anyone,” “someone,” and “everyone,” are used to refer to a person or object, or a group of people or objects, without explaining who or what they are.



## 79.1 MATCH THE QUESTIONS TO THE CORRECT RESPONSES

Does anybody here speak Greek?

What would you prefer? Tea or coffee?

1 Could I have something to drink?

No, nobody here speaks that language.

2 Where's everyone gone?

It was nothing. Probably just the cat playing.

3 Is there anything wrong, Edward?

Yes, it's half past five.

4 Did you hear something downstairs?

There's a meeting in room 10.

5 Does anyone know what time it is?

I'm not feeling very well at all.

6 Can someone help me open this jar?

No one's heard of him, sorry.

7 Does anyone know Bill Jones here?

Of course. Pass it here.





## 79.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Did you buy anything when you were at the grocer's?

There's nothing here to eat!

I was exhausted after checking everything.

Everyone's asking why you're not at the party!



## 79.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Michael was bored because he didn't know **nobody** at the party.

*Michael was bored because he didn't know anybody at the party.*

① I'm sorry. I know absolutely **anything** about electronics.

---

② Libby doesn't want **something** to eat at the moment.

---

③ I don't get on with my brother. We have **something** in common.

---

④ I didn't buy **nothing** while I was at the store.

---

⑤ There's **anything** to do here. I'm bored!

---

⑥ I think I just heard **nothing** downstairs.

---

# 80 Possession

Possessive determiners, possessive pronouns, apostrophe with "s," and the verbs "have" and "have got" are all used to express possession in English.



## 80.1 WRITE EACH WORD IN ITS OTHER FORMS

	SUBJECT PRONOUN	POSSESSIVE DETERMINER	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN
	<u>          I          </u>	<u>          my          </u>	<u>          mine          </u>
1	<u>                          </u>	<u>          your          </u>	<u>                          </u>
2	<u>          he          </u>	<u>                          </u>	<u>                          </u>
3	<u>                          </u>	<u>                          </u>	<u>          hers          </u>
4	<u>                          </u>	<u>          its          </u>	<u>                          </u>
5	<u>          we          </u>	<u>                          </u>	<u>                          </u>
6	<u>                          </u>	<u>                          </u>	<u>          theirs          </u>



## 80.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

1

2

3

You look very excited with your new present.

Here, you can borrow my umbrella.

There's Silvia taking her dogs for a walk.

I saw the children playing with their dog.



### 80.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

this is phone? your

*Is this your phone?*

4 aren't These theirs. books

1 their Where house? is

5 coat. her That is

2 yours. is This desk

6 Are glasses? these his

3 my that there? charger is

7 these mine? of Which cups is



### 80.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

This is **my** / ~~mine~~ jacket, so this one must be ~~your~~ / **yours**.

- 1 **Their** / ~~Theirs~~ IT system is modern, but **our** / ~~ours~~ needs replacing soon.
- 2 These earrings are **my** / ~~mine~~, but that bracelet is **her** / ~~hers~~.
- 3 **My** / ~~Mine~~ bag is the yellow one. Which one is **your** / ~~yours~~?
- 4 The large boxes are **their** / ~~theirs~~, but these small ones are **our** / ~~ours~~.
- 5 **Her** / ~~hers~~ parents live in the countryside, while **my** / ~~mine~~ live in the city.
- 6 If this is **your** / ~~yours~~, then I don't know which laptop is **my** / ~~mine~~.
- 7 Stacey put **her** / ~~hers~~ lunch in the fridge. Are these sandwiches **your** / ~~yours~~?
- 8 Katia parked **her** / ~~hers~~ car by the park. Where did your parents park **their** / ~~theirs~~?
- 9 We drive **our** / ~~ours~~ cars on the right, whereas they drive **their** / ~~theirs~~ on the left.
- 10 **Your** / ~~Yours~~ father drives a sports car, but **my** / ~~mine~~ rides a bike.





### 80.5 REWRITE THE PHRASES USING THE POSSESSIVE "S"

The cat of Laura

Laura's cat

1 The uncle of Mary and Don

\_\_\_\_\_

2 The son of Ben

\_\_\_\_\_

3 The grades of the students

\_\_\_\_\_

4 The cat of Sam and Ayshah

\_\_\_\_\_

5 The house of Debbie

\_\_\_\_\_

6 The dog of my parents

\_\_\_\_\_

7 The car of Marco and Kate

\_\_\_\_\_

8 The house of my grandparents

\_\_\_\_\_

9 The grandchild of Elsa

\_\_\_\_\_

10 The parrot of Beth

\_\_\_\_\_

11 The choice of the people

\_\_\_\_\_



### 80.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Look at the dog! It's chasing its tail.

Look at the dog! Its chasing it's tail.

1 The women's clothes are downstairs.

The womens' clothes are downstairs.

2 Pick the babie's toys up, please.

Pick the babies' toys up, please.

3 Your car's new, while my is old.

Your car's new, while mine is old.

4 That book is yours, and this one is mine!

That book is your, and this one is my!

5 Toms' computer is slow.

Tom's computer is slow.

6 Hurry up! Its time you left for work.

Hurry up! It's time you left for work.

7 My town is bigger than yours.

My town is bigger than your.

8 The childrens' food is here.

The children's food is here.

9 That bag over there is your.

That bag over there is yours.

10 These are the ladie's coats.

These are the ladies' coats.

11 My parent's house is small.

My parents' house is small.

12 The mens' changing room is there.

The men's changing room is there.

13 The dog can't find it's home.

The dog can't find its home.







## 80.7 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Have you got any good</p> <p>1 I don't have any money</p> <p>2 The nearest town has a swimming pool</p> <p>3 Have you got any free time</p> <p>4 My dad hasn't got a phone or</p> <p>5 My wife's from a big family and has</p> <p>6 Has your brother got</p> <p>7 I'm very worried that my son</p> | <p>and a bowling alley.</p> <p>two brothers and two sisters.</p> <p>ideas about what present to buy Dad?</p> <p>left to go on vacation this year.</p> <p>to help me with this project?</p> <p>doesn't have any friends at college.</p> <p>an email account.</p> <p>red hair and a long beard?</p> |
|---|---|



## 80.8 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH QUESTION

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Have you got some time to look at these files?</p> <p></p> <p>Yes, I have, no problem. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Yes, I do, no problem. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>3 Do you have your passport?</p> <p></p> <p>Yes, I do. It's in my bag. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Yes, I have. It's in my bag. <input type="checkbox"/></p>                    |
| <p>1 Do you have a moment?</p> <p></p> <p>Yes, I have. How can I help? <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Yes, I do. How can I help? <input type="checkbox"/></p>                           | <p>4 Do we have a meeting today?</p> <p></p> <p>No, we don't. There's one tomorrow. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>No, we haven't. There's one tomorrow. <input type="checkbox"/></p> |
| <p>2 Has your sister got a boyfriend?</p> <p></p> <p>No, she doesn't. Why do you ask? <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>No, she hasn't. Why do you ask? <input type="checkbox"/></p>       | <p>5 Has your town got a metro?</p> <p></p> <p>Yes, it does. There are two lines. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Yes, it has. There are two lines. <input type="checkbox"/></p>       |

# 81 Defining relative clauses

A relative clause is a part of a sentence that gives more information about the subject. A defining, or restrictive, relative clause identifies the subject being talked about.



## 81.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the English. assistant could We speak hired who

*We hired the assistant who could speak English.*

1 who a I man sailed met around world. has the

2 exciting. you The really book was that me lent

3 that delicious. ordered The Misha looks dessert

4 knows some she invited college. people who Laura from

5 visit to was The hoping palace was that closed. I

6 Sanjay sea. house close that is a moving the to to is

7 performed stage. on I band loved the which





## 81.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



I wish my neighbors had a dog that didn't bark so much.



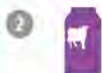
I wish my neighbors had a dog who didn't bark so much.



My son has a camera which takes wonderful photos.



My son has a camera which it takes wonderful photos.



The milk what you bought yesterday has turned sour.



The milk that you bought yesterday has turned sour.



The woman who was just speaking to you is incredibly rich.



The woman was just speaking to you is incredibly rich.



Where did you get the hat you're wearing?



Where did you get the hat who you're wearing?



## 81.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

My sister is starting a fashion business

which produces kitchen equipment.

1 Ben works for a company

who dreams of becoming an astronaut.

2 Do you like the shirt

that helps people find clothes that suit them.

3 Fatima showed me the dog

which we're planning to buy.

4 Betty is playing a woman

that I bought at the market today?

5 This is the villa

who lives over the road.

6 There are only two stores

that she wants to adopt.

7 My dad studied with the woman

that she could lend me?

8 Does Mira have an umbrella

that sell that particular part.

# 82 Non-defining relative clauses

Like defining relative clauses, non-defining relative clauses add extra information about something. However, this simply gives extra detail, rather than changing the sentence's meaning.



## 82.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



1



2



3



The Statue of Liberty, which is on a small island, is popular with tourists.

Someone crashed into my brand new car, which I only bought last week.

Sam has a lovely dog, which he takes for a walk each morning.

Den has a new sports car, which he spent all his savings on.



## 82.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

The lecture, **which** / ~~who~~ had been scheduled for 3pm, was canceled at the last minute.

- 1 My new sweater, **who** / **which** is made of wool, cost \$40.
- 2 I teach many international students, many of **that** / **whom** are Indian.
- 3 David's cat, **who** / **which** is usually very calm, just scratched me!
- 4 My wife, **who** / **that** is an optician, enjoys her job very much.
- 5 He has two daughters, both of **who** / **whom** are lawyers.



### 82.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, ADDING COMMAS WHERE NECESSARY

My rabbit which I haven't seen for days is still missing.

*My rabbit, which I haven't seen for days, is still missing.*



1 I've recently bought a house which I'm now decorating.



2 My nephew who is only seven years old is learning to play the violin.



3 The singer thanked her fans many of whom were at the event.



4 My car which I only bought last week has already broken down.



5 Jill who has worked here for 15 years is extremely reliable.



### 82.4 MARK WHETHER EACH RELATIVE CLAUSE IS DEFINING OR NON-DEFINING

The Algarve, which is in Portugal, has some amazing beaches.

Defining  Non-defining

1 I'm working with someone who is always late for work.

Defining  Non-defining

2 The fans, many of whom had traveled far, were delighted.

Defining  Non-defining

3 I own so many books, most of which I've never read.

Defining  Non-defining

4 Sula's wearing the necklace that you bought her.

Defining  Non-defining



# 83 Other relative structures

Relative words introduce phrases that describe a noun in the main part of the sentence. Different relative words are used to refer to different types of nouns.



## 83.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

This building is ~~whereby~~ / ~~where~~ the local council used to meet before they moved offices.

- 1 I'll never forget that afternoon ~~when~~ / ~~which~~ Paula told me she wanted to move to another country.
- 2 Jane, ~~who~~ / ~~whose~~ sister you work with, is giving the speech this afternoon.
- 3 A long break and some sunshine is exactly ~~which~~ / ~~what~~ Kelly needs right now.
- 4 Toni's café, ~~where~~ / ~~that~~ you worked as a student, has closed down.
- 5 I'm interviewing a woman ~~whose~~ / ~~that~~ brother used to work here.
- 6 I'm looking forward to a time ~~which~~ / ~~when~~ we don't have to work so late.
- 7 That sofa is just ~~which~~ / ~~what~~ we need for the living room.
- 8 The companies have an agreement ~~whereby~~ / ~~which~~ they share customer data.



## 83.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE RELATIVE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Sam is a new author whose first book has just become a bestseller.

- 1 I thought it was Monday \_\_\_\_\_ Manuela was supposed to come.
- 2 I have no idea \_\_\_\_\_ he's bought me for my birthday.
- 3 We visited the part of India \_\_\_\_\_ my parents grew up.
- 4 Liam, \_\_\_\_\_ report you've just read, is an excellent lawyer.
- 5 Stratford-upon-Avon, \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare was born, is lovely.

whose    where

~~whose~~    when

where    what



### 83.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



That's the restaurant where I ate last week. It was great!



That's the restaurant where ate I last week. It was great!



1



In 2008, when I got my first job here, I worked in the warehouse.



In 2008 when I got my first job here I worked in the warehouse.



2



This is Miguel, whose sister works in the HR department.



This is Miguel, who's sister works in the HR department.



3



I'm not sure what is this, but I know I like it.



I'm not sure what this is, but I know I like it.



4



I've already broken the phone what I bought last week.



I've already broken the phone that I bought last week.



### 83.4 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

this

is

what

about

book

Do you know what this book is about ?

I

to

art

decided

study

when

1 2013 was the year \_\_\_\_\_.

groceries

we

where

buy

our

2 This is the store \_\_\_\_\_.

loves

whose

Jane

songs

3 That singer, \_\_\_\_\_, is performing tonight.

need

I

for

party

what

Abigail's

4 This dress is exactly \_\_\_\_\_.

# 84 Question words with “-ever”

Adding “-ever” to question words changes their meaning. These words can be adverbs or determiners in their own clauses, or they can join two clauses together.



## 84.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

My son always sends me a postcard

whichever decision I make.

1 I want to finish this puzzle,

for John's birthday dinner tonight.

2 Catrina said she'd support me,

from wherever he is in the world.

3 You can wear whatever you like

however long it takes.

4 Tony tries to visit his parents

has left a terrible mess.

5 Whoever was in the kitchen last

whenever he gets the chance.



## 84.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

Let's grab a coffee together ~~wherever~~ / whenever you're in London next.

- 1 ~~However~~ / ~~Whatever~~ did Jon do to make you so angry with him?
- 2 We're going to be late, ~~whenever~~ / ~~whichever~~ route we take.
- 3 Elsie told me that she'd be there to help ~~whenever~~ / ~~however~~ I needed her.
- 4 The engagement's not a secret. You can tell ~~whoever~~ / ~~whichever~~ you want.
- 5 ~~However~~ / ~~Whoever~~ won first prize must be a really good artist.
- 6 ~~Whenever~~ / ~~Whatever~~ I hear that music, I always think of Paris.
- 7 My new kitten follows me ~~whichever~~ / ~~wherever~~ I go in the house.





### 84.3 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



We think you'll be very happy with your new car, whichever one you choose.



5 I do some gardening \_\_\_\_\_  
I have a spare moment.



1 I'm going to study drama, \_\_\_\_\_  
my parents say.



6 \_\_\_\_\_ student  
answers this question will win a prize.



2 John's in front of the TV \_\_\_\_\_  
I go to see him.



7 I'm going to finish writing this novel,  
\_\_\_\_\_ long it takes!



3 \_\_\_\_\_ Andy's gone,  
he's forgotten his wallet.



8 \_\_\_\_\_ it is John's cooked,  
it tastes absolutely terrible.



4 \_\_\_\_\_ painted this  
clearly has a vivid imagination.



9 \_\_\_\_\_ much  
Anthony earns, he always wants more.

whenever

whatever

wherever

whoever

whatever

however

~~whichever~~

however


whichever


whenever


# 85 "There"


"There" can be used with a form of "be" to talk about the existence or presence of a person or thing. Sentences with "there" can be used in many different tenses.


### 85.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES


1  There was such a mess after the party.


2  This is disgusting! There are rats in this kitchen!

3  There are some lovely hats for sale in that store.

4  There's been an explosion at the laboratory.

5  I'm afraid there isn't any chocolate cake left.

6  There's going to be a jazz band at the concert hall tonight.

7  There was some awful pollution on the beach.

### 85.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

There **is** a fire here last night.  
\_\_\_\_\_

1 There **isn't** still some milk in the fridge.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 There **was** huge crowds yesterday.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 There **has been** an inspection so far.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4 There **are** any cakes left, sorry.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5 There **were** a storm last night.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6 There **will** a presentation tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7 There **are** a heatwave at the moment.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8 There **haven't been** no thefts since June.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9 There **be** a storm later today.  
\_\_\_\_\_



### 85.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>There are going to be lots of people</p> <p>① There have been a lot of complaints</p> <p>② There will be a meeting to</p> <p>③ There's going to be a party</p> <p>④ There weren't many</p> <p>⑤ There are not enough</p> |  | <p>about the poor service at the restaurant.</p> <p>to celebrate our silver wedding anniversary.</p> <p>at the teachers' convention next week.</p> <p>seats for all the people here.</p> <p>discuss the forthcoming redundancies.</p> <p>cars in my village when I was a child.</p> |
|---|--|---|



### 85.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

- Please pay your bill on time. There **is** / ~~are~~ a penalty for late payments.
- ① There **are** / **were** a lot of visitors at yesterday's exhibition.
  - ② There **isn't** / **aren't** any tickets for the show this evening.
  - ③ There **is** / **are** a lot of sugar in the recipe for Cathy's cake.
  - ④ **Is** / **Was** there a party to celebrate Olive's 90th birthday tomorrow?
  - ⑤ There **is** / **are** going to be a soccer match this afternoon.
  - ⑥ **Was** / **Were** there enough room for all the guests?
  - ⑦ Do you know if there **is** / **are** another train tonight?
  - ⑧ There **has been** / **have been** some terrible weather recently.
  - ⑨ There **wasn't** / **weren't** many students at the lecture.
  - ⑩ Bill's so busy at work. There **is** / **was** a deadline soon.
  - ⑪ There **is** / **are** water all over the floor. What happened?
  - ⑫ I'm sure there **isn't** / **won't be** another unexpected election this year.





## 85.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

there at Will any entertainment party? the be

*Will there be any entertainment at the party?*

1 in fridge. food the plenty of There's

2 a is the street. in large There dog

3 there in town? good Are cafés any your

4 and vegetables. selling a lot are of people fruit There

5 bus won't another be today. There

6 there rice left? any you if is Do know

7 waiting people There are of outside. lots

8 be course? the an Will of end there the exam at

9 there a afternoon? to is meeting be going this

# 86 Introductory "it"

"It" is often used when a sentence has no clear subject and is sometimes known as a dummy subject or empty subject.

## 86.1 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH QUESTION

How far away is Birmingham from here?

It's about 20 miles north of here.

It looks like it might rain later.

1 What's it like outside this morning?

Awful! It's pouring.

It's about half a mile away.

2 When was William Shakespeare born?

It was in 1564, I think.

It was in Stratford-upon-Avon.

3 What time is it, Paula?

It's cloudy.

It's quarter to three.

4 Is it very far to Lisa's house?

It's on Park Road.

No, it's just a five-minute walk.

## 86.2 MARK WHAT "IT" REFERS TO IN EACH SENTENCE

I've got so much to do, and it's ten past three already!

**Time**

**Distance**

**Day / Date / Month / Year**

**Weather**

1 It's about 20 miles to the guest house.

**Time**

**Distance**

**Day / Date / Month / Year**

**Weather**

2 It's Monday today, isn't it?

**Time**

**Distance**

**Day / Date / Month / Year**

**Weather**

3 It can get really cold in Siberia.

**Time**

**Distance**

**Day / Date / Month / Year**

**Weather**

4 It's half past seven.

**Time**

**Distance**

**Day / Date / Month / Year**

**Weather**



### 86.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |    |                                     |   |   |
|----|-------------------------------------|---|---|
|    | It's easy to forget how difficult   | → | absence makes the heart grow fonder.    |
| 1  | It is essential that all candidates |   | it's unlikely you'll pass the exam.     |
| 2  | It's often said that                |   | it can be to learn a new language.      |
| 3  | If you don't start working harder,  |   | arrive 15 minutes before the interview. |
| 4  | It was so nice to meet              |   | too fast on the highway.                |
| 5  | It is difficult for foreigners to   |   | you and your husband at the party.      |
| 6  | It is dangerous to drive            |   | to find a free moment to call you.      |
| 7  | It would be great if                |   | pronounce some words in my language.    |
| 8  | It's been impossible for me         |   | rained every day on our vacation.       |
| 9  | It's such a shame that it           |   | and look up at the stars.               |
| 10 | It was a surprise to discover       |   | we could meet for coffee next weekend.  |
| 11 | It is wonderful to lie in a field   |   | like the bus isn't coming.              |
| 12 | It's been 40 minutes. It looks      |   | that we share the same birthday.        |



### 86.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "THAT" OR "TO"

- It is unlikely that the house is going to be finished on time.
- It is true \_\_\_\_\_ being a doctor involves a lot of hard work.
  - It is important \_\_\_\_\_ lock all the doors when you go out.
  - It is useful \_\_\_\_\_ write down important information in a notebook.
  - It is possible \_\_\_\_\_ Andre forgot that the party is tonight.



# 87 Shifting focus

"It" clauses, "what" clauses, or moving a noun to the front of a sentence can all be used to put emphasis on a certain word or phrase.



## 87.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

It's the window that's broken,	→	who broke the photocopier.
① It's honey, not sugar, that		who first walked on the moon.
② It was the manager, not the intern,		not the door.
③ It was Neil Armstrong, not Buzz Aldrin,		you should add to the cake.
④ It was Poland that I visited,		I saw at the theater.
⑤ It's on Tuesday that we're meeting,		not Germany.
⑥ It was James, not John, who		not Thursday.



## 87.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

	① 	② 	③ 
What I really hate is people singing out of tune.	What my children enjoy more than anything is playing outside.	What I enjoyed most were the fascinating ruins.	What Karen needs is to get more sleep.



### 87.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

The day we agreed on for our meeting was Monday, not Tuesday.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ I admire most in the world is my grandfather.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ I'll never forget is when I won the national prize.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ they gave for firing me was ridiculous.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ I loved visiting most was Montenegro.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ I enjoyed most at school was history.

~~The day~~

The reason

The person

The country

The one thing

The subject



### 87.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

I relax bath. What is need hot to a

*What I need to relax is a hot bath.*

1 that the about like my most I location It's home.

2 want around do I to is the world. travel What

3 while animal like The to tiger. I'd safari the see is on

4 the was Dave most acting. disliked What bad

5 about who the was flood. neighbor It told my me

# 88 Inversion

Reversing the normal order of words, or inversion, can be used for emphasis or a sense of drama. It is common after certain types of adverbials.



## 88.1 MATCH THE CORRESPONDING SENTENCES

Robert is an excellent writer, and he's also a very confident public speaker.

Only after my departure did I realize that I had forgotten to say goodbye.

1 It had just stopped raining, and the children ran out to play.

Not only is Robert an excellent writer, but he is also a very confident public speaker.

2 I only realized after my departure that I had forgotten to say goodbye.

Never before have we achieved such amazing results.

3 I had just arrived at the airport when I decided I wasn't going to leave the country.

Hardly had it stopped raining when the children ran out to play.

4 We have never achieved such amazing results before.

Rarely have I had such a positive response to a proposal.

5 We did not suspect that the boy would one day become president.

No sooner had I arrived at the airport than I decided I wasn't going to leave the country.

6 I have rarely had such a positive response to a proposal.

Only when I opened the letter did I realize that I was going to college.

7 I only realized that I was going to college when I opened the letter.

Little did we know that the boy would one day become president.





## 88.2 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

has

Never

book

a

before

*Never**before**has**a**book*

sold out so quickly!

since

1980s

such

the

I

Not

known

have

1 \_\_\_\_\_ a hot summer.

sometimes

such

witness

you

do

Only

2 \_\_\_\_\_ kindness from strangers.

had

project

sooner

we

the

finished

No

3 \_\_\_\_\_ than the next one began.

they

Little

expensive

suspect

how

did

4 \_\_\_\_\_ the vacation would be.



## 88.3 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

I can't be bothered to clean this mess up.

Neither do I. Neither can I. 

1 I don't want this ride to end!

So do I! Neither do I! 

2 I'm quite pleased with these sales figures.

So do I. So am I. 

3 I love our new car!

So do I. So love I.

# 89 Ellipsis

Some words can be left out of a sentence to avoid repetition or when the meaning can be understood without them. This is called ellipsis.

### 89.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>1 I left my keys somewhere,</p>	<p>but I'm not sure how.</p>
<p>2 Ella woke up before dawn and</p>	<p>but I can't remember where.</p>
<p>3 I need to tell my parents I'm leaving college,</p>	<p>but don't know where to find one.</p>
<p>4 We need to hire a new mechanic</p>	<p>made herself a strong cup of coffee.</p>
<p>5 I'd like to cook something special</p>	<p>but I don't think he will.</p>
<p>6 I hope Jamie comes to the wedding,</p>	<p>this, but we don't know who.</p>
<p>Someone with real talent painted</p>	<p>for dinner, but I can't decide what.</p>

### 89.2 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH QUESTION

<p>1 Which day are you free for dinner?</p>	<p>8 o'clock <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Tuesday <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>2 Which T-shirt do you prefer?</p>	<p>Thanks. Medium. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Neither of them, to be honest. <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>3 Where did you buy that new shirt?</p>	<p>About \$10, I think. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>At the market on Church Road. <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>4 What do you think of the steak?</p>	<p>With fries and peas, please. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>A bit tough, actually. <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>5 When does your course start?</p>	<p>Physics and biology, I think. <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Monday morning, 9am. <input type="checkbox"/></p>



### 89.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, LEAVING OUT THE UNNECESSARY WORDS

I'm nervous about the exam in case I haven't studied enough for the exam.

*I'm nervous about the exam in case I haven't studied enough.*



1 I asked Charlie to stop playing soccer, but he didn't stop playing.



2 I'm trying to make an omelet, but I don't know how you make one.



3 I want to move to a new area, but I don't know where to move.



4 I really enjoy skiing, but my brother doesn't enjoy it.



5 Someone's left a present, but I'm not sure who left it for me.



6 I want to buy one of these laptops, but I'm not sure which one I should buy.



7 Catalina said she'd come to the party, but I don't think she will come.



8 There is a museum somewhere, but I'm not sure where the museum is.



9 I tried to lift the box, but I wasn't strong enough to lift it.



10 My wife can swim really well, but I can't swim.



11 I want to study something at college, but I'm not sure what I want to study.



12 Anne and Si passed the exam, but Matt didn't pass it.





# 90 Shortening infinitives

Phrases with infinitives can sometimes be reduced or shortened to prevent repetition. This helps language to sound more natural.

## 90.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I tried to fix the bathtub but wasn't able to.

I need to finish painting the house today, but I really don't want to.

There are fewer factories here than there used to be.

I was going to buy some shoes but couldn't afford to.

## 90.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I would love to buy a new motorcycle

as there used to be.

1 There aren't as many cars on the streets

but I completely forgot to.

2 I meant to call my grandma on her birthday,

if I had the money to.

3 Sean could have studied at Oxford University,

than I meant to.

4 Liz hasn't completed as much work

but he chose not to.

5 I've eaten much more cake

as she intended to.



### 90.3 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

Would you like to start tomorrow?



Yes, I'd love to!

Yes, I'd love!

3

Emma is so happy with her new job.



Yes, she seemed to.

Yes, she seemed to be.

1

Why didn't Ed come to the party?



He didn't want to.

He didn't want it.

4

Karl said he'd give me back the \$50.



That's right. He promised to give.

That's right. He promised.

2

Kelly's keen to pass her driving test.



Yes, she's determined to.

Yes, she's determined to be.

5

I'm quite worried about the test on Thursday.



There's no need to be.

There's no need to worried.



### 90.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to I plants, meant forgot. but I the water

*I meant to water the plants, but I forgot.*

1

software than needs is This it complicated more be. to

2

party though come didn't even the promised. she Mia to

3

the to try I'd but don't love I hang gliding, have courage.



## 90.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

There are fewer tigers in the wild these days than there used to.

There are fewer tigers in the wild these days than there used to be.

① Maurice wasn't at the convention, even though he had hoped to be.

Maurice wasn't at the convention, even though he had hoped to.

② I was thinking of studying French at college but decided to not.

I was thinking of studying French at college but decided not to.

③ Shelly isn't at school today, but she ought to.

Shelly isn't at school today, but she ought to be.

④ I wasn't able to go on the trip, but I did want to.

I wasn't able to go on the trip, but I did want be.

⑤ The dish isn't vegetarian, even though it's supposed to.

The dish isn't vegetarian, even though it's supposed to be.



## 90.6 CROSS OUT THE UNNECESSARY WORDS

There's no need to come with us if you don't want to ~~come with us~~.

① Lisa invited me to visit Spain, and I told her I'd love to visit her country.

② We asked Mario to play golf with us, but he didn't want to play with us.

③ I wanted to see you this summer, but I won't be able to visit you.

④ We can alter the dress for you. Would you like us to do that?

⑤ I've never seen the Great Wall of China, but I'd love the chance to see it.

⑥ Gerard doesn't have a motorcycle now, but he used to have one.

⑦ Mary was going to buy a dog, but she decided not to buy one.

⑧ I dream of buying that apartment, but I can't afford to buy it.



# 91 Substitution

As well as ellipsis (leaving words out), repetition can be avoided by replacing some phrases with shorter ones. This is called substitution.



## 91.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I had to buy some new headphones

there are some nice ones by the park.

1 There aren't any cafés here, but

slower than the ones in my old office.

2 The computers at work are much

because my old ones broke.

3 If you need to borrow a raincoat,

but my brother-in-law does.

4 I don't own a drill I'm afraid,

you can take one of mine.



## 91.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

I thought we'd run out of flour, but I found some in the cupboard.

1 Cathy refuses to get a phone, though her husband \_\_\_\_\_.

2 I really don't like this sofa, but I \_\_\_\_\_ over there.

3 There isn't any juice left, but I think \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge.

4 I love your boots. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ in the boutique by the park.

5 I liked the look of the cakes in the bakery, so I \_\_\_\_\_.

has got one

some similar ones

there's some

like the red one

~~found some~~

bought some

### 91.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

	We don't like fishing, but our dad does.
1	I really liked that house, but my husband didn't.
2	My car is ruined. I need to buy a new one.
3	I really like cooking, and so does my husband.
4	If that dress is too expensive, we have cheaper ones, too.
5	We'd like a dessert. Could you recommend one?
6	That looks delicious. Can I try some?
7	Zhao liked the artwork, but I didn't.
8	I own few books myself, but there are lots at the library.

### 91.4 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

Do you think the president will be there?		I hope so! <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	I hope! <input type="checkbox"/>
1 Do I need to dress smartly in the office?		We'd prefer if you so. <input type="checkbox"/>	We'd prefer it if you did. <input type="checkbox"/>
2 Do you have this T-shirt in medium?		I don't think so, sorry. <input type="checkbox"/>	I don't think it, sorry. <input type="checkbox"/>
3 Do you know the way to Angelo's bakery?		I'm afraid I don't. <input type="checkbox"/>	I'm afraid so. <input type="checkbox"/>
4 The forecast said it will get better later.		I hope that yes. <input type="checkbox"/>	I hope so. <input type="checkbox"/>
5 Did you manage to finish the final report?		I'm afraid not. <input type="checkbox"/>	I'm afraid no. <input type="checkbox"/>
6 Did you remember to clean your bedroom?		I did so this morning. <input type="checkbox"/>	I did it this morning. <input type="checkbox"/>

# 92 Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. In English, they usually come before the noun that they are describing. There are several categories of adjective.



## 92.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

They're building a huge luxury apartment complex there.

- 1 My boyfriend gave me a \_\_\_\_\_ necklace for my birthday.
- 2 My grandma's knitting me a \_\_\_\_\_ sweater.
- 3 We went to see the \_\_\_\_\_ ruins while in Mexico.
- 4 We adopted a \_\_\_\_\_ kitten from the shelter.

~~huge luxury~~  
 dark-green woolen  
 beautiful gold  
 cute friendly  
 ancient Aztec



## 92.2 WRITE THE ADJECTIVES FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

SIZE

*little*

SHAPE

AGE

COLOR

NATIONALITY

MATERIAL

china tiny Argentinian diamond-shaped ~~little~~ round Vietnamese young pink  
 light-blue red French ancient massive cotton steel old square





### 92.3 FIND SIX MORE ADJECTIVES IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

A W F U L R A O B W O N S  
 N S H I L I N G O O D N V  
 N D E B E A U T I F U L D  
 R I N T P R T I U T C U I  
 A W O Q D U R H H L I J G  
 E O I S T Y A D F A E N D  
 M N L O Y A O Z I O R H Z  
 P D V E C L E V E R E N D  
 T E F R I E N D L Y A G I  
 E R I D D E L I C I O U S  
 R F C E P S R T I E G E D  
 B U B U T E R R I B L E M  
 B L T N T Q H W E D L N D

#### GENERAL OPINION

awful

1 \_\_\_\_\_

2 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

#### SPECIFIC OPINION

clever

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_\_\_



### 92.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I read this exciting new French novel while on vacation.

Mark's just bought this lovely large detached house.

Ebru made this lovely white silk dress.

That small old brown dog belongs to Harry.



## 92.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE ADJECTIVES IN THE CORRECT ORDER

antique

small

vase

Liam bought a small antique vase at the market.

Indian

rug

beautiful

old

1 Claude has a \_\_\_\_\_ in his living room.

American

big

red

2 Nigel's bought himself a \_\_\_\_\_ sports car.

wooden

small

black

3 Catalina keeps her jewelry in a \_\_\_\_\_ box.

tall

charming

young

4 My granddaughter is engaged to a \_\_\_\_\_ man.



## 92.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT ADJECTIVE IN EACH SENTENCE

Sanjay's brother is completely ~~terrifying~~ / **terrified** of snakes.



1 Everyone found the presentation extremely ~~boring~~ / **bored**.



2 The instructions are so ~~confusing~~ / **confused**. I don't know what to do.



3 Selma and Paul are **interesting** / ~~interested~~ in wildlife.



4 We were all **amazing** / ~~amazed~~ when Sharon won the race.



# 93 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives can be made weaker or stronger by adverbs, whereas non-gradable adjectives describe absolute qualities that cannot usually be graded.

### 93.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

1 Ola is a very talented cook.

2 Turn the TV down! It's really loud!

3 They were ecstatic when they won the tournament.

4 It was boiling hot outside.

5 Marty was really hungry and ordered two hamburgers.

6 My new shoes are not very comfortable at all.

7 Our plumber is not particularly reliable.

### 93.2 MARK WHETHER EACH ADJECTIVE IS EXTREME, ABSOLUTE, OR CLASSIFYING

My grandmother is **Scottish**.

Extreme

Absolute

Classifying

1 I really enjoyed Jessica's presentation; it was **superb**.

Extreme

Absolute

Classifying

2 My wedding day was completely **perfect**.

Extreme

Absolute

Classifying

3 My company now has a **monthly** meeting about taxes.

Extreme

Absolute

Classifying

4 Pete's ideas for the business are always **terrible**.

Extreme

Absolute

Classifying





### 93.3 FIND SIX MORE ADJECTIVES IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

I N T E R E S T I N G N S  
 N S L G A N S G T L E Q V  
 N D E M J S E D S A A M D  
 R I N T B R W I L R R R E  
 X K H W D D A A H G I D G  
 E I N T E L L I G E N T D  
 C U U L L A E Z E O R I Z  
 O A V E S S Q U A R E N D  
 L C D A W E S O M E A G I  
 D H I J A R P E R F E C T  
 R E C E P S K I E N G E D  
 A W O O D E N H I J J L M

#### GRADABLE

\_\_\_\_\_ *interesting* \_\_\_\_\_  
 ① \_\_\_\_\_  
 ② \_\_\_\_\_  
 ③ \_\_\_\_\_

#### NON-GRADABLE

\_\_\_\_\_ *awesome* \_\_\_\_\_  
 ④ \_\_\_\_\_  
 ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_  
 ⑥ \_\_\_\_\_



### 93.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>① The movie was pretty</p> <p>② The weather was extremely</p> <p>③ The cookies that Ellie made</p> <p>④ I found the exam almost</p> <p>⑤ Our business is reasonably</p> <p>⑥ This antique vase is quite</p> <p>⑦ Martin was absolutely</p>		<p>① bad. It rained every day.</p> <p>② were not very tasty.</p> <p>③ good. I'd watch it again.</p> <p>④ unique. There are no others like it.</p> <p>⑤ impossible to finish in time.</p> <p>⑥ terrified when he saw the bear.</p> <p>⑦ successful, but it could do better.</p>
---	--	--



### 93.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

found the really lecture fascinating. history Michel

*Michel found the history lecture really fascinating.*

1 food the wasn't at The particularly impressive. wedding

2 good she but speaks mistakes. Hikaru English, makes fairly

3 rooms the really were The awful. hotel in

4 reasonably is good in still condition. old car Our



### 93.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE ADJECTIVES IN THE PANEL

Sonia keeps her jewelry in a wooden box in her bedroom.


- 1 I can't criticize his cakes. They're absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The clothes here are of good quality and \_\_\_\_\_ priced.
- 3 The concert was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_. She simply can't sing!
- 4 There's a wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ castle in my town.
- 5 The software is \_\_\_\_\_ easy to use and won't cause too many problems.
- 6 It's \_\_\_\_\_ outside! Make sure you wear a hat.


reasonably awful perfect ~~wooden~~ freezing medieval fairly


# 94 Comparative adjectives


Comparative adjectives are used to compare two things. They can either be formed by adding the suffix “-er,” or by putting “more” or “less” before the adjective.


### 94.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES


1  The weather was colder than we'd hoped for.


2  The test was easier than last year's.

3  Al's new car is faster than mine.

4  The festival was better than I had expected.

5  The Eiffel Tower is taller than the Statue of Liberty.

6  Mount Everest is higher than K2.

7  Our house is larger than our neighbor's.

### 94.2 WRITE THE ADJECTIVES IN THEIR COMPARATIVE FORM

	nice	nicer
1	fast	_____
2	beautiful	_____
3	happy	_____
4	hot	_____
5	young	_____
6	thin	_____
7	cold	_____
8	complicated	_____
9	early	_____
10	tiring	_____
11	bad	_____
12	popular	_____
13	big	_____
14	lazy	_____
15	good	_____
16	angry	_____
17	close	_____
18	difficult	_____





### 94.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The castle is far older	extravagant than I'd expected.
1	Danny's dog is much	older than her husband.
2	The wedding was more	than the cathedral.
3	Karen is only slightly	larger than mine.
4	Going to work by bike is	common than they were 10 years ago.
5	Electric cars are much more	less stressful than taking a train.
6	I'm less sporty than my	sensible than she used to be.
7	My daughter is much more	elder brother. I prefer reading to football.



### 94.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE COMPARATIVES INTO THEIR OTHER FORMS

Our new teacher is much **friendlier** than the last.

*Our new teacher is much more friendly than the last.*

1 The countryside is far **quieter** than the city.

---

2 The Caspian Sea is **shallower** than the Black Sea.

---

3 The new software we have to use couldn't be **simpler**.

---

4 The road was **narrower** than I thought, and I scratched the car.

---

5 Jane is really mad with you. I've never seen anyone **angrier**.

---



## 94.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Jay got up earlier today because of the test.                            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Jay got up earlier today because of the test.                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 Lisbon is much more farther away from here than Seville.               | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Lisbon is much farther away from here than Seville.                      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 2 The Sahara Desert is hotter than the Atacama.                          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| The Sahara Desert is hotter than the Atacama.                            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3 I feel happier since I moved to Barcelona.                             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| I feel happyer since I moved to Barcelona.                               | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4 The weather in California is much better than in Montana.              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| The weather in California is more better than in Montana.                | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5 A cheetah is more faster than a lion.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| A cheetah is faster than a lion.   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 6 Tom is only slightly more tall than his brother, Joe.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Tom is only slightly taller than his brother, Joe.                       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 7 These jeans are much tighter than my old ones.                         | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| These jeans are much more tighter than my old ones.                      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 8 The old buildings in my town are beautifuller than the modern ones.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| The old buildings in my town are more beautiful than the modern ones.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 9 My new apartment is slightly smaller than my old one.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| My new apartment is slightly smaller then my old one.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 10 My city has a worse transportation system than yours.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| My city has a worst transportation system than yours.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 11 The staff in this hotel are much more friendly than in the other one. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| The staff in this hotel are much more friendlier than in the other one.  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 12 This book is much interestinger than the last one I read.             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| This book is much more interesting than the last one I read.             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |



## 94.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



It's much cheaper to make your own curtains.



4 A salad is \_\_\_\_\_ than a hamburger.



1 The castle is \_\_\_\_\_ than the skyscrapers.



5 My colleagues are \_\_\_\_\_ than me.



2 She was \_\_\_\_\_ than me in the race.



6 A cruise liner is \_\_\_\_\_ than a sail boat.



3 The weather was \_\_\_\_\_ than was forecast.



7 I go to bed \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday evenings.

a lot bigger

much more experienced

much better

just a bit quicker

slightly earlier

~~much cheaper~~

quite a bit older

a lot healthier



# 95 Two comparatives together

Two comparatives can be used together in a sentence to show the effect of an action. They are also used to show that something is changing.



## 95.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

The higher we climbed,

the more stressed I get.

1 The more responsibility I take on,

the more I seem to spend.

2 The faster he drove,

the farther we could see.

3 The more I earn,

the more scared she became.

4 The longer I live here,

the easier the exam will be.

5 The more you study,

the more clothes you should wear.

6 The farther Joe walked,

the more I want to move away.

7 The colder it gets,

the more tired he became.



## 95.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE COMPARATIVES IN THE PANEL

This book gets more and more interesting with every page.

1 The \_\_\_\_\_, the more there will be to eat.

2 Ola's getting \_\_\_\_\_ at the guitar.

3 It's getting \_\_\_\_\_. Don't forget your scarf!

4 The faster you work, the \_\_\_\_\_ the project.

5 My nephew gets \_\_\_\_\_ every time I see him.

earlier you'll finish

more and more skilled

~~more and more interesting~~

colder and colder

taller and taller

bigger the cake



### 95.3 CROSS OUT THE UNNECESSARY WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



The hotter ~~the curry is,~~ the better ~~it tastes.~~

1



The more people come to the party, the merrier it will be.

2



The sooner you finish this, the better it will be for all of us.

3



The stronger the coffee is, the better it tastes.

4



The more glamorous the dress you wear, the better you will look.



### 95.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

weather's

The

hotter

getting

and

hotter

day.

each

*The weather's getting hotter and hotter each day.*

1

is

and

Everyone

more

concerned

more

climate

about

change.

getting

2

Philip's

keep

taller

growing

and

taller.

sunflowers

3

gets

The

exam

harder

harder

and

year.

each

4

Robots

becoming

are

and

more

more

sophisticated.

# 96 "As... as" comparisons

Comparisons using "as... as" constructions can be used to discuss degrees of similarity and difference. They can be modified with adverbs to make them stronger or weaker.

## 96.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I'm sure your pasta will be as tasty as usual.



The other dress isn't as pretty as this one.



This hat is twice as expensive as the other one.



I hope the new chef is as talented as Jean-Louis.



Dogs are not so easy to look after as cats.



I hope the movie is as good as the book.



The results are not as good as we had hoped.

## 96.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Om can't run as fast so Ravi.

Om can't run as fast as Ravi.

1 I'm not as confident as I was before.

I'm not as confident I was before.

2 The food wasn't half as good as we'd hoped.

The food wasn't as half good as we'd hoped.

3 Rome isn't nowhere near as big as Paris.

Rome is nowhere near as big as Paris.

4 He told us to finish as quickly as possible.

He told us to finish so quickly as possible.

5 It's not quite as cold as last winter.

It's quite not as cold as last winter.

6 Ula doesn't call as much so she used to.

Ula doesn't call as much as she used to.

7 The journey took twice as long as usual.

The journey took as twice as long as usual.

8 Ben was as quiet as a mouse.

Ben was so quiet as a mouse.

9 Ed is as almost old as my aunt.

Ed is almost as old as my aunt.

10 It cost just as much as it did last time.

It cost just as much it did last time.





### 96.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



This dress is **almost** / ~~quite~~ as nice as the skirt.

1



The exam was just **so** / **as** hard as I had expected.

2



The skyscrapers here are nowhere near as big **as** / **like** in Shanghai.

3



This restaurant is **twice** / **twice as** expensive as the others.

4



The café is **almost as** / **as almost** big as the church.

5



The house is **quite not** / **not quite** as easy to find as we thought.

6



The singer was nowhere **near** / **close** as good as I hoped.

7



The play lasted twice **so** / **as** long as I expected.

8



It's **nearly not** / **not nearly** as cold as we'd imagined.

9



The supermarket was not **almost** / **quite** as busy as I feared.

10



The dress is **twice as** / **twice so** big as I thought it would be.

11



The other buildings are nowhere near **so** / **as** tall as the clock tower.

12



The company results were not quite **so** / **like** good as last year's.

13



The new store will be as popular **as** / **like** the others.

14

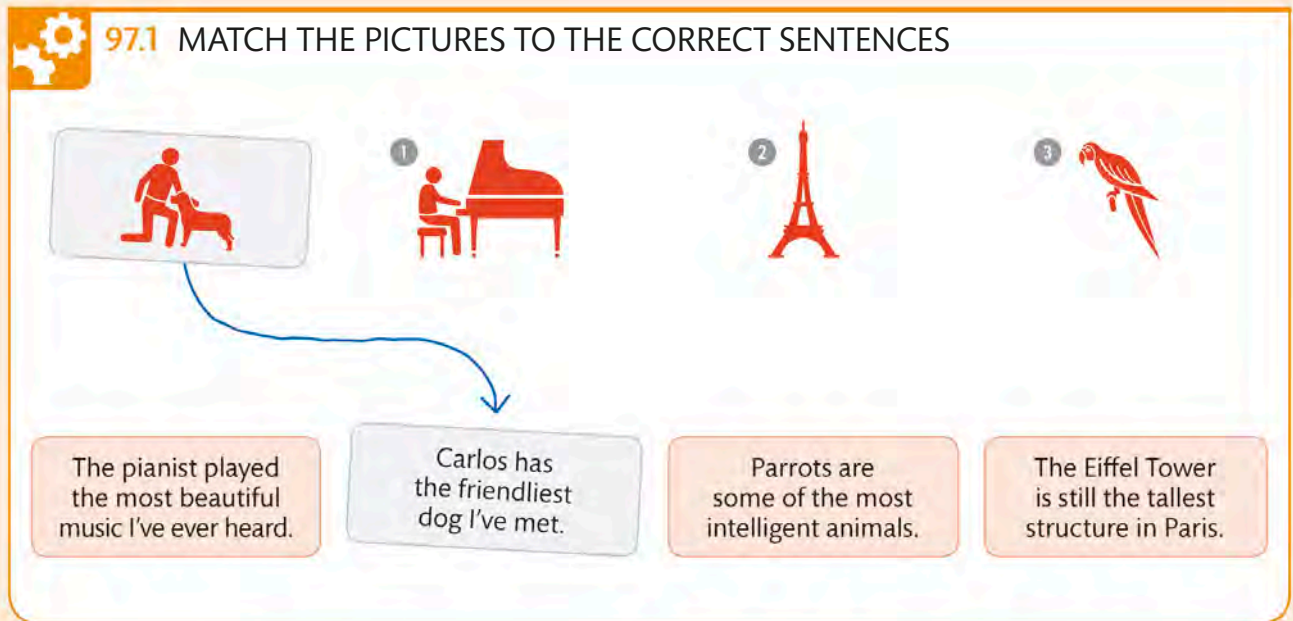


This was **nearly not** / **not nearly** as easy to make as I expected.

# 97 Superlative adjectives

Superlative adjectives, such as “the biggest” or “the smallest,” are used to talk about extremes. Long adjectives take “most” and “least” to show an extreme.

**97.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES**



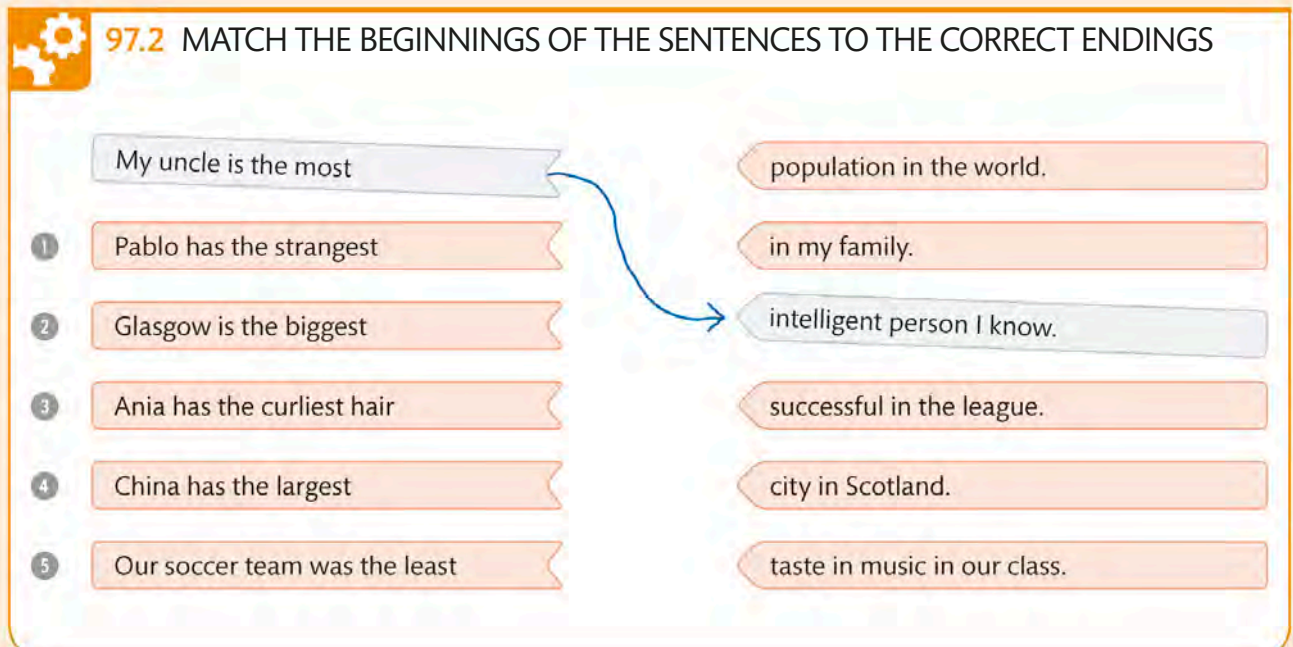
1. The pianist played the most beautiful music I've ever heard.

2. Carlos has the friendliest dog I've met.

3. Parrots are some of the most intelligent animals.

4. The Eiffel Tower is still the tallest structure in Paris.

**97.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS**



1. My uncle is the most

2. Pablo has the strangest

3. Glasgow is the biggest

4. Ania has the curliest hair

5. China has the largest

6. Our soccer team was the least

7. population in the world.

8. in my family.

9. intelligent person I know.

10. successful in the league.

11. city in Scotland.

12. taste in music in our class.



### 97.3 WRITE THE SUPERLATIVE FORM OF EACH ADJECTIVE

	tall	<i>tallest</i>	10	dirty	_____
1	sweet	_____	11	smart	_____
2	frightening	_____	12	heavy	_____
3	good	_____	13	big	_____
4	slow	_____	14	boring	_____
5	easy	_____	15	beautiful	_____
6	happy	_____	16	dangerous	_____
7	careful	_____	17	tidy	_____
8	bad	_____	18	new	_____
9	thin	_____	19	expensive	_____



### 97.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

is met. person ever the bravest I've Shelley

*Shelley is the bravest person I've ever met.*

---

1 expensive café one places to the of is eat. That most

---

2 was because the most attractive. vase bought We this it

---

3 the things My sweetest grandma about always says me.

---





### 97.5 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE ADJECTIVES IN THEIR SUPERLATIVE FORM

That was the most difficult (**difficult**) test I've ever done!

- 1 The Mississippi is \_\_\_\_\_ (**long**) river in the United States.
- 2 The sailfish is \_\_\_\_\_ (**fast**) fish in the ocean.
- 3 Death Valley is \_\_\_\_\_ (**hot**) place on earth.
- 4 Bungee jumping is \_\_\_\_\_ (**exciting**) thing I've ever done.
- 5 Mont Blanc is \_\_\_\_\_ (**high**) mountain in France.
- 6 My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ (**creative**) person I know.
- 7 I felt like \_\_\_\_\_ (**lucky**) person alive when I won the lottery.
- 8 Some of \_\_\_\_\_ (**old**) paintings can be found in local caves.



### 97.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

We bought ~~a cheapest~~ / **the cheapest** computer in the store.

- 1 This is the **worst** / ~~baddest~~ coffee I've ever drunk.
- 2 Daniel is the **most fastest** / ~~fastest~~ boy in my class.
- 3 I think this has been the **hottest** / ~~hottest~~ day of the year so far.
- 4 This feels like the **slowest** / ~~most slow~~ train I've ever been on.
- 5 Ashalata is the **friendliest** / ~~friendlyest~~ manager at work.
- 6 This is the **less** / ~~least~~ expensive car we have on sale at the moment.
- 7 That's the **most exciting** / ~~excitingest~~ news I've heard today.
- 8 Mr. Clarke is the **most strictest** / ~~strictest~~ teacher in school.
- 9 Michael lives the **farest** / ~~farthest~~ away from our office.
- 10 That was one of the **saddest** / ~~sadest~~ movies I've ever seen.



## 97.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Miguel is **easy the best** artist in my city.

*Miguel is easily the best artist in my city.*



1 Elvira was the **most fast** cyclist in the race.



2 I chose **least expensive** drink on the menu.



3 This is **of far the tastiest** hamburger I've ever eaten.



4 The Burj Khalifa is one of **the most tallest** buildings in the world.



5 It's **worst** summer I've ever known.



6 This is **the most best book** I've read for ages.



7 Paul is **the happiest** person I know.



8 Anna is **most worried** of us all about tomorrow's inspection.



9 London is **the biggest** city in England.



10 Don is **easiest the tallest** person in our class.



11 Feng is **one the most talented** musicians I know.



12 Claire's is **far the cheapest** salon in town.



# 98 Adverbs of manner

Words such as “quietly” and “loudly” are adverbs. They describe and give more information about verbs, adjectives, phrases, and other adverbs.

## 98.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE ADVERBS IN THE PANEL



Paul has arrived safely.



1 Tim \_\_\_\_\_ helped Jo with her bags.



2 The kids played \_\_\_\_\_ with the dog.



3 This bus is moving so \_\_\_\_\_!



4 Charles \_\_\_\_\_ ate all the chocolate.



5 It started to rain \_\_\_\_\_.



6 Carla shouted \_\_\_\_\_ at her computer.



7 Ed's mom thinks he drives too \_\_\_\_\_.



8 My doctor told me to eat \_\_\_\_\_.



9 Kim waited \_\_\_\_\_ for her results.

~~safely~~      nervously      happily  
 healthily      slowly      heavily  
 greedily      kindly      angrily      quickly

## 98.2 WRITE EACH ADJECTIVE AS AN ADVERB

- |    |                  |                   |
|----|------------------|-------------------|
|    | <u>powerful</u>  | <u>powerfully</u> |
| 1  | <u>noisy</u>     | _____             |
| 2  | <u>reluctant</u> | _____             |
| 3  | <u>good</u>      | _____             |
| 4  | <u>shy</u>       | _____             |
| 5  | <u>happy</u>     | _____             |
| 6  | <u>long</u>      | _____             |
| 7  | <u>calm</u>      | _____             |
| 8  | <u>straight</u>  | _____             |
| 9  | <u>easy</u>      | _____             |
| 10 | <u>hard</u>      | _____             |
| 11 | <u>soft</u>      | _____             |
| 12 | <u>dangerous</u> | _____             |
| 13 | <u>repeated</u>  | _____             |
| 14 | <u>clumsy</u>    | _____             |
| 15 | <u>late</u>      | _____             |
| 16 | <u>bad</u>       | _____             |
| 17 | <u>fast</u>      | _____             |
| 18 | <u>stylish</u>   | _____             |





### 98.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>Liam is in trouble because</p> <p>① That child has been waiting</p> <p>② Anne advised me to arrive</p> <p>③ George left the room quietly,</p> <p>④ The number of people studying</p> <p>⑤ Alina is doing fine after</p> <p>⑥ I think I answered all</p> <p>⑦ I worry a lot about how</p>	<p>early for the interview tomorrow.</p> <p>so as not to wake up the baby.</p> <p>he always arrives late for work.</p> <p>patiently for more than an hour.</p> <p>her operation last week.</p> <p>the questions in the test correctly.</p> <p>fast my daughter rides her bike.</p> <p>English has increased rapidly.</p>
---	--



### 98.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY WRITING THE ADJECTIVES IN BRACKETS AS ADVERBS

Miguel strolled \_\_\_\_\_ *slowly* \_\_\_\_\_ **(slow)** through the forest.

① Ella \_\_\_\_\_ **(gentle)** stroked her new kitten.

② Marvin played the piano \_\_\_\_\_ **(beautiful)** last night.

③ Louis has worked \_\_\_\_\_ **(hard)** to improve his English.

④ An eagle flew \_\_\_\_\_ **(high)** above the ruined castle.

⑤ My stapler has \_\_\_\_\_ **(mysterious)** disappeared.

⑥ Kathy sang very \_\_\_\_\_ **(good)** at the performance.

⑦ Tim shouted \_\_\_\_\_ **(angry)** at the TV when his team lost.

⑧ Sangita wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ **(bad)** injured in the accident.

⑨ I went \_\_\_\_\_ **(straight)** to my boss's office to talk to her.

⑩ Claudio passed the final test \_\_\_\_\_ **(easy)**.

## 99

# Comparative and superlative adverbs

Adverbs have comparative forms to compare or show differences. They also have superlative forms to talk about extremes.



## 99.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I think the red silk shirt

when it started to snow.

1 Ola played the most beautifully

since you got the promotion.

2 Carlo speaks English more

suits you the best.

3 You've been working harder

of all the musicians.

4 Ahmed drove more carefully

fluently than he does German.



## 99.2 WRITE EACH ADVERB IN ITS COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS

	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
	badly	worse	worst
1	early	_____	_____
2	fast	_____	_____
3	regularly	_____	_____
4	hard	_____	_____
5	well	_____	_____
6	stylishly	_____	_____



### 99.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

works the always My here manager latest.

*My manager always works here the latest.*

1 up week. the I usually during get earlier

2 cheetah run a can much human. A than faster

3 than used frequently he less here Juan comes to.



### 99.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Could you explain a bit more clearly how to do it?

- 1 I should have looked \_\_\_\_\_ at my contract.
- 2 My employees \_\_\_\_\_ when they're tired.
- 3 Who \_\_\_\_\_ in the test, you or your sister?
- 4 Joan gets up \_\_\_\_\_ in our family.
- 5 My teacher said I should \_\_\_\_\_ in class.
- 6 Lena has to \_\_\_\_\_ to get to our office.
- 7 Our cat can \_\_\_\_\_ than our dog.

work less efficiently

try harder

jump much higher

travel the farthest

more closely

~~more clearly~~

performed better

the earliest





## 100


## Adverbs of degree


Adverbs of degree can be placed in front of adjectives and verbs to strengthen or weaken their original meaning. Some adverbs can only be paired with certain adjectives.


**100.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES**


1  The two vases were only slightly different to each other.


2  My grandmother's house is extremely small.

3  Juan's cake was very popular. Everyone wanted more.

4  I don't think it's a particularly difficult mountain to climb.

5  Eric thought the test was fairly straightforward.

6  The house at the end of the road looks really unusual.

7  Phil's feeling remarkably fit despite how ill he was.

**100.2 WRITE THE ADVERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS**

**STRONGER**

*remarkably*

**WEAKER**

extremely fairly ~~remarkably~~ slightly  
very not particularly barely really

**100.3 WRITE THE ADVERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS**

**GRADING**

*slightly*

**NON-GRADING**

not particularly totally ~~slightly~~ fairly  
utterly completely very absolutely



### 100.4 WRITE THE ADVERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

#### ENTIRELY

*totally*

#### ALMOST ENTIRELY

completely  
virtually

mainly

~~totally~~

largely

mostly

thoroughly

utterly



### 100.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

documentary

This

interesting.

is

extremely

*This documentary is extremely interesting.*

1

is

Marta's

complete.

painting

virtually

2

the

interesting.

fairly

thought

I

was

lecture

3

news.

was

absolutely

hear

my

to

thrilled

Beatriz

4

from

brother.

Craig

his

different

completely

looks



## 100.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The rides at the fair were totally awesome.



The rides at the fair were entirely awesome.



1 Unfortunately, the hotel we stayed in was utterly awful.



Unfortunately, the hotel we stayed in was remarkably awful.



2 We found the music festival very brilliant this year.



We found the music festival completely brilliant this year.



3 The students' handwriting was barely legible.



The students' handwriting was nearly legible.



4 The food in the canteen is absolutely good.



The food in the canteen is remarkably good.



5 It was nearly impossible, but we reached the summit in the end.



It was slightly impossible, but we reached the summit in the end.



## 100.7 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Saori's style of singing

wear jeans to work on Fridays.

1 The play had almost started

useless without its charger.

2 It's perfectly acceptable to

is really quite unique.

3 This old phone is absolutely

by the time we found the theater.

4 We were completely exhausted

writing his PhD thesis.

5 Jon is extremely talented

when we reached the summit.

6 Timothy has essentially finished


and should study art at college.





# 101 Adverbs of time


Adverbs of time are used to give more precise information about exactly when something happens. They can also refer to a continuing event or action.


### 101.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES


1  I've just knocked over that vase. I'm so sorry.


2  I haven't finished loading the dishwasher yet.

3  We've already packed everything for the move.

4  It looks like Sanchez is about to score!

5  Sarah looked like she was about to fall asleep.

6  The bus hasn't arrived yet. I'm going to be home late.

7  The chicken's not ready. It's still cooking in the oven.

### 101.2 MARK WHETHER EACH SENTENCE REFERS TO A PAST, ONGOING, OR FUTURE ACTION

**It's still raining.** Will it ever stop?

Past

Ongoing

Future

1 **I'm about to leave** work. Is it important?

Past

Ongoing

Future

2 Mona **just called**. She's at the café.

Past

Ongoing

Future

3 Jim **has already seen** that film.

Past

Ongoing

Future

4 George **hasn't cleaned** his bedroom **yet**.

Past

Ongoing

Future

5 Margaret **still works** in the HR department.

Past

Ongoing

Future



### 101.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Has Daniel finished painting the bedroom **yet** / **just**?

1



I have **yet** / **just** received a letter from an old friend.

2



Mizuho has **already** / **just** been to Paris three times before.

3



Have you been introduced to Tonia's parents **yet** / **just**?

4



The judges are **about to** / **just** reveal the winner of the competition.

5



I've **yet** / **just** finished my final exam. It's such a relief.

6



I haven't finished the book you lent me **already** / **yet**.

7



Maria has **yet** / **just** told me she is quitting her job.

8



The concert had **already** / **just** begun by the time we arrived.

9



Lisa has **yet** / **just** returned from her trip around South America.

10



I was **about to** / **just** leave, when I remembered the oven was still on.

11



The new block on Park Street isn't finished **just** / **yet**.

12



Hurry up, everyone! The train is **just** / **about to** leave.

13



I've **already** / **yet** told Anna that the meeting has started.



### 101.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>We've just seen a bear</p> <p>1 Vanessa is still working</p> <p>2 We have already spent</p> <p>3 Has Zahra visited</p> <p>4 Giuseppe's restaurant</p> <p>5 Clive looks like he's</p> <p>6 We still haven't heard</p>		<p>all the money we saved.</p> <p>about to give a speech.</p> <p>and its cubs in the forest.</p> <p>for the bank, isn't she?</p> <p>the National Gallery yet?</p> <p>back from the plumber.</p> <p>is still the best in town.</p>
---	--	---



### 101.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

<p>It looks like the band is about to go on stage.</p> <p>It looks like the band is about go on stage.</p> <p>1 Mesut still hasn't given back the \$30 I lent him. Mesut hasn't still given back the \$30 I lent him.</p> <p>2 Leroy is still the best player on the team. Leroy is yet the best player on the team.</p> <p>3 Has Timo still shown you around the new office? Has Timo shown you around the new office yet?</p> <p>4 The guests have already eaten all of the birthday cake. The guests have eaten already all of the birthday cake.</p> <p>5 I just have seen your brother walking out of the police station. I've just seen your brother walking out of the police station.</p> <p>6 Jess is yet living in Aberdeen, isn't she? Jess is still living in Aberdeen, isn't she?</p>	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>
--	--



## 102

## Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency show how often something is done, from something done very frequently ("always") to something not done at all ("never").



## 102.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

- Lou has to work late about once a month. = Lou ~~often~~ / **occasionally** works late.
- 1 Ola goes to the gym six days a week. = Ola goes to the gym **very often** / ~~sometimes~~.
- 2 It rains in the desert once or twice a year. = It ~~hardly ever~~ / **regularly** rains in the desert.
- 3 I visit my gran on Tuesday and Thursday. = I **regularly** / ~~always~~ visit my gran.
- 4 Most Saturdays I go shopping with friends. = I ~~always~~ / **usually** go shopping on Saturday.
- 5 She goes running about three times a week. = She ~~occasionally~~ / **frequently** goes running.
- 6 We spend all our vacations in France. = We **always** / ~~sometimes~~ go to France on vacation.



## 102.2 WRITE THE ADVERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

ALL OR MOST OF THE TIME

*always*

SOME OF THE TIME

NOT OFTEN OR NOT AT ALL

regularly

very often

almost never

~~always~~

usually

occasionally

never

hardly ever

rarely

sometimes

nearly always



### 102.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to occasionally work Yasmin cycles summer. in the

*Yasmin occasionally cycles to work in the summer.*

1 ever in the is Karen on Fridays. hardly office

2 I about my once a parents year. visit

3 photocopier work nearly always at The is broken.

4 three the week. Mira to gym times a goes



### 102.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

How often do you visit

least five times a week.

1 Benny's very reliable and

until after 10pm.

2 Carlita goes swimming at

your sister in Spain?

3 Ella often stays at work

is almost never late for work.

4 I come from central Australia,

every Sunday morning.

5 When do you usually

where it hardly ever rains.

6 Ania plays badminton with her cousin

finish work in the evening?

# 103 "So" and "such"

"So" and "such" are adverbs which can be used with certain words to add emphasis. They are similar in meaning, but they are used in different structures.



## 103.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Your apartment is so much	→	more spacious than mine.
1	It was so windy		that we couldn't fly a kite.
2	Your children are so		much better behaved than mine.
3	The bride wore such		all decided to go swimming.
4	It was so hot that we		beautifully decorated cake before.
5	I've never seen such a		a stylish dress for the wedding.



## 103.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

	The photocopier's making such an awful noise.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	The photocopier's making a so awful noise.	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	The cake that Carlos made for the party was such tasty.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	The cake that Carlos made for the party was so tasty.	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Your exam results are so better this year.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Your exam results are so much better this year.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	This store sells such lovely clothes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	This store sells such a lovely clothes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Your brother owns such a beautiful villa.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Your brother owns a so beautiful villa.	<input type="checkbox"/>





### 103.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

The children behaved ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ badly that we sent them to bed.

- 1 Colm's job looks ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ interesting, but it's very badly paid.
- 2 My new phone's ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ better than my old one.
- 3 Everyone had ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ a great time at the school reunion.
- 4 Hank is ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ generous. He gave me a watch for my birthday.
- 5 The new intern works ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ harder than the old one.
- 6 It was ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ a shock when our boss said he was leaving.
- 7 Lorna's ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ a talented musician.
- 8 The weather was ~~such~~ / ~~so~~ / ~~so much~~ bad that we decided to cancel the barbecue.



### 103.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

This book is ~~so~~ better than the author's last one.

*This book is so much better than the author's last one.*



- 1 My little sister is ~~a so~~ good dancer. She should take classes.



- 2 The match was ~~such a~~ disappointing. No one scored.



- 3 The weather is ~~so~~ warmer in Florida. You should move here.



- 4 Kirsty's ~~such a~~ funny. She always makes me laugh.



- 5 Sandra is ~~so much a~~ good cook. Everything she makes is delicious.



# 104 "Enough" and "too"

"Enough" is used when there is the correct degree or amount of something. "Too" is used when something is more than necessary or wanted.

## 104.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Do you think we have enough money to buy this house?

The food was delicious, but there wasn't enough of it.

Bob was too tired to concentrate on cooking the meal.

If you're too cold, close the window.

## 104.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Dan's old enough to remember the 1960s.

- ① I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to afford those shoes.
- ② Michael is \_\_\_\_\_ to watch that movie.
- ③ The water is \_\_\_\_\_ to go for a swim.
- ④ My neighbor always plays his music \_\_\_\_\_.
- ⑤ This bookcase is \_\_\_\_\_ for me to move.
- ⑥ My French isn't \_\_\_\_\_ to understand Pierre.
- ⑦ The exercise was \_\_\_\_\_ for a total beginner.

too hard  
rich enough  
too loudly  
~~old enough~~  
too young  
too heavy  
good enough  
warm enough



### 104.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

was spicy The for food India Christopher. too in

*The food in India was too spicy for Christopher.*

1 catch last bus. We enough the to have time

2 should sweater. enough, warm If put you're a on you not

3 guests food tonight? enough Do the have for we all

4 were tickets concert expensive. too for The rock the

5 enough bottle. Norbert the tall isn't reach to

6 walked we there. wasn't The so far, café too

7 spoke professor The hear. us too for to quietly

8 enough rent. earn I'm but not the rich, pay I to

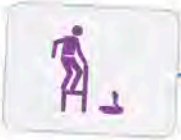
9 fast but I enough. best wasn't tried my race, in I the



# 105 Prepositions

Prepositions are words that are used to show relationships between different parts of a clause, for example relationships of time, place, or reason.

## 105.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The meeting is on Monday morning.



He was so scared that he jumped up onto a chair.



There's a café by the church.



Peter works at the local airport.



Julie gave her teacher her homework after the lesson.



Mia was nervous before going in to speak to her boss.



Dan put the flowers on the table.

## 105.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Since quit her job, she's been happier.

Since quitting her job, she's been happier.

1 Before leaving for work, I wash the dishes.

Before to leave for work, I wash the dishes.

2 I have an English class on Tuesdays.

I have an English class at Tuesdays.

3 I don't know what to listen.

I don't know what to listen to.

4 Al passed without study for the exam.

Al passed without studying for the exam.

5 Kumi's listening the radio.

Kumi's listening to the radio.

6 Emma's house is by the park.

Emma's house is for the park.

7 Their office is next the library.

Their office is next to the library.

8 After finishing work, I go swimming.

After to finish work, I go swimming.

9 Jon wants to studying Spanish.

Jon wants to study Spanish.

10 I live with Pete, with Dan, and with Ed.

I live with Pete, Dan, and Ed.



### 105.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PREPOSITIONS IN THE PANEL

There are lots of great restaurants by our hotel.

- 1 My aunt is really good \_\_\_\_\_ making her own clothes.
- 2 My new house is \_\_\_\_\_ the National Museum.
- 3 In spite \_\_\_\_\_ the bad pay, Eleni loves her job.
- 4 You've been looking \_\_\_\_\_ that phone all morning.
- 5 Instead \_\_\_\_\_ going to college, I became a carpenter.

of      at  
~~by~~      at  
 near      of



### 105.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Michael and Amanda are looking forward **to go out** for dinner tonight.

*Michael and Amanda are looking forward to going out for dinner tonight.*

- 1 I'm not used **to wake up** so early each morning.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 My son is planning **to going** to college in New York.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I'm sorry I haven't got around **to reply** to your email yet.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Jean-Pierre used **to driving** a red sports car.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Martin decided **to quitting** his job at the library.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Virginie confessed **to steal** the bottle of wine.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

# 106 Prepositions of place

Prepositions of place are used to relate the position or location of one thing to another. Using a different preposition usually changes the meaning of a sentence.



## 106.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Katie is ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ a bus to London.

- 1 The dinner is ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the table.
- 2 Julian lives ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the United States.
- 3 Mesut wasn't ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the party.
- 4 I went to meet Ula ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the airport.
- 5 Carmen works ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ France.
- 6 I bought it ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the supermarket.
- 7 Mary stayed ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ bed all morning.
- 8 There are 20 rooms ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the building.
- 9 Put the toys back ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ their box.
- 10 We went to London ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the train.
- 11 Marta's left her keys ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ home.
- 12 Ben is sitting ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ the sofa.
- 13 The students are all ~~in~~ / ~~at~~ / ~~on~~ their desks.



## 106.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

There's a great selection of movies

- 1 Marina works at Z-Tech, the
  - 2 You have some lovely
  - 3 My uncle Tony lives at
  - 4 We keep the lawnmower
  - 5 The college library can be found
  - 6 I usually buy my bread at
- posters on your kitchen wall.
- number 16, Nelson Avenue.
- playing at the theater downtown.
- software company on Park Street.
- on the ninth and tenth floors.
- the bakery across the road.
- in the shed behind the house.





### 106.3 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PREPOSITIONS IN THE PANEL



We have a lovely photograph hanging  
above the couch.



4 Ian put his bag on the seat  
 \_\_\_\_\_.



1 The castle sits \_\_\_\_\_  
 some ugly modern buildings.



5 There's a lovely park \_\_\_\_\_  
 my house.



2 I placed the final box of books  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the others.



6 The library is \_\_\_\_\_  
 the bank and the café.



3 Alan is working in the garage  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a car.



7 I found Craig and Robin hiding  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a tree.

on top of

behind

under

near

between

~~above~~

in front of

opposite

# 107 Prepositions of time

Prepositions of time are often used to talk about schedules and routines. They give information about when something happens, and how long it lasts.

### 107.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES

1

2

3

4

5

6

During the week I wake up at 7am.

Canada gets very cold in winter.

We'd better hurry. Our flight leaves in two hours.

I'm free on Wednesday and Thursday this week.

Jan has a bath in the evening before she goes to bed.

I usually make coffee when I get up in the morning.

It often gets far too hot in the summer in the city.

### 107.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Ted has plans on the afternoon.

Ted has plans in the afternoon.

1 I'm meeting Eliana at 6pm.

I'm meeting Eliana on 6pm.

2 Joe has his final exam at Friday.

Joe has his final exam on Friday.

3 She started working here on August.

She started working here in August.

4 I go to Angelo's café at lunchtime.

I go to Angelo's café in lunchtime.

5 Pat works from home at Thursdays.

Pat works from home on Thursdays.

6 I always have a nap in the afternoon.

I always have a nap on the afternoon.

7 Their wedding is on August the 15th.

Their wedding is in August the 15th.

8 The performance starts in 4 o'clock.

The performance starts at 4 o'clock.

9 Maria usually goes skiing in winter.

Maria usually goes skiing on winter.

10 My daughter was born at 1996.

My daughter was born in 1996.



### 107.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

<p>I always pick my children up</p> <p>1 Americans celebrate</p> <p>2 The best time to spot</p> <p>3 I often go walking in spring,</p> <p>4 I usually clean my apartment</p> <p>5 Magda usually stays with</p>		<p>Independence Day on July 4.</p> <p>a barn owl is at night.</p> <p>from school at 3pm.</p> <p>on Sunday morning.</p> <p>her family at Christmas.</p> <p>when the weather improves.</p>
--	--	--



### 107.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

10am   open   7pm.   to   The   is   shop   from

*The shop is open from 10am to 7pm.*

---

1 be   end   August.   The   will   the   closed   store   of   until

---

2 eleven.   goes   usually   at   to   half   Simon   past   bed

---

3 train   to   seven.   quarter   leaves   The   at

---

4 you   break?   the   did   What   summer   do   during

---





### 107.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Wendy has been on vacation \_\_\_\_\_ *for* \_\_\_\_\_ three days.

- 1 I usually go for lunch \_\_\_\_\_ 1 and 2pm.
- 2 I'm planning to work here \_\_\_\_\_ I retire.
- 3 Martin has worked here \_\_\_\_\_ October.
- 4 I lived in Spain for a couple of years \_\_\_\_\_ the 1970s.
- 5 Guests should leave their rooms \_\_\_\_\_ 11:30am.

until            during  
~~for~~        since  
 between        by



### 107.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Yasmin **is** a student here since last year.

*Yasmin has been a student here since last year.*

- 1 The café is open **for** 8am and 6pm.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'll be writing this essay **to** 10pm.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I've been working here **since** about five months.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We're traveling around Mexico from July **and** September.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Mabel's lived in Madrid **from** she was a child.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Camilla **is** my manager here since July.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

# 108 Other prepositions

Prepositions can be used to express relationships other than place and time, such as origin, ownership, and absence.

## 108.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



We went for a walk with our children this afternoon.

Elsa shouldn't have left the house without an umbrella.

My aunt's written a book about the town where she grew up.

I get a lot of work done when I travel by train.

## 108.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I've just written a book ~~by~~ / ~~with~~ / about the history of European royalty.

- ① *Macbeth* was written ~~by~~ / ~~without~~ / about William Shakespeare in the early 1600s.
- ② Takumi went to the theater ~~by~~ / ~~with~~ / about his wife last night.
- ③ We found our way to the castle ~~by~~ / ~~without~~ / about too much difficulty.
- ④ I ordered boiled potatoes ~~by~~ / ~~with~~ / about my steak.
- ⑤ Most tourists travel around Tokyo ~~by~~ / ~~with~~ / without metro.
- ⑥ We need to talk ~~by~~ / ~~without~~ / about employing some more staff.
- ⑦ Sarah managed to finish the project ~~by~~ / ~~without~~ / about any help.



### 108.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>① We could never have completed this</p> <p>② We usually pay for</p> <p>③ Chris went to an interesting</p> <p>④ We're looking for a house</p> <p>⑤ This wonderful piece of music</p> <p>⑥ We're going on vacation</p> <p>⑦ I took a photo of a fox in</p> | <p>lecture about Madagascar.</p> <p>with a view onto the sea.</p> <p>project without all of your hard work.</p> <p>our groceries by card.</p> <p>my backyard with my phone.</p> <p>was composed by Chopin.</p> <p>to Kenya without our children.</p> |
|--|--|



### 108.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

building designed an This by was architect. amazing

*This building was designed by an amazing architect.*

① always Julie such with enthusiasm. sings

② a childhood. about book his written Pete's

③ to the decided without buy I thinking. laptop

④ sport. get fit can playing by You a



# 109 Dependent prepositions

Some words must be followed by a specific preposition, called a dependent preposition. These words can be adjectives, verbs, or nouns.

## 109.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



There has been a big increase in people studying science.

My grandchildren are excited about going on vacation.

Andy sold his old car to one of his neighbors.

You can always count on Dave to leave the place clean and tidy.

## 109.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

you me of copy please? Could make the a report,

*Could you make me a copy of the report, please?*

1 meal the haven't yet. We for paid

2 angry dirty Emilia was the hotel. in the rooms about

3 sent. the waiting email to a I'm for I that response



### 109.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



What do you think **about** / ~~on~~ my new haircut?

1



I was so proud **of** / **with** Katie when she passed the test.

2



There are lots of advantages **by** / **to** working from home.

3



This company is advertising **of** / **for** a new secretary.

4



Is everyone ready **for** / **of** the big exam tomorrow?

5



Stephanie has a very positive attitude **at** / **toward** her work.

6



The roadwork caused problems **for** / **with** many drivers.

7



I was so impressed **of** / **by** the room service.

8



My boss told us **to** / **about** be more punctual in future.

9



I don't agree **to** / **with** my husband about many things.

10



My son is afraid **of** / **with** spiders.

11



They've found another problem **for** / **with** my car.

12



Esther has talked **to** / **about** moving abroad for years.



### 109.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

My daughter's asked \_\_\_\_\_ *for* \_\_\_\_\_ a new laptop for her birthday.

- 1 I saw Leonard talking \_\_\_\_\_ a police officer yesterday.
- 2 There's been an increase \_\_\_\_\_ the number of thefts.
- 3 These animal toys should appeal \_\_\_\_\_ children.
- 4 Sangita is annoyed \_\_\_\_\_ her housemates.
- 5 My grandfather loves to talk \_\_\_\_\_ his childhood.

~~for~~      in  
to      about  
with      to



### 109.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Will you have time to reply **at** my email today?

*Will you have time to reply to my email today?*

- 1 Ella is really upset **with** losing her mother's necklace.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Bill is anxious **for** giving a speech at the conference.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I have an excellent relationship **between** my manager.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 My teacher asked me what I know **for** Roman history.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Erik has sold his bicycle **for** one of his cousins.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I've been having a lot of problems **for** my internet router.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## 110

## Coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions are words that link words, phrases, or clauses of equal importance. There are special rules for using commas with coordinating conjunctions.



## 110.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Would you like a first-class or standard-class ticket?

1



Peter and his dad were going to play baseball, but it was raining.

2



Pete's great with the customers, but he's very clumsy.

3



There's a deli and a bookstore on Maple Road.



## 110.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

There were no tickets for the game left,

but the special effects were amazing.

1

The movie was disappointing,

or by telephone.

2

You can contact us by email

so we had to watch it on TV instead.

3

Bill's never traveled abroad,

and my brother lives in Lyon.

4

My sister lives in Paris,

nor does he plan to.



### 110.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS IN THE PANEL

It's only 10am and yet I've already got all my errands done.

- 1 I've been to Ottawa, \_\_\_\_\_ I've never been to Vancouver.
- 2 It was raining, \_\_\_\_\_ we decided to go to the art gallery.
- 3 While walking, we saw an eagle, a puma, \_\_\_\_\_ a bear.
- 4 Ben has to choose between studying math, art, \_\_\_\_\_ psychology.
- 5 I did not like the food at the restaurant, \_\_\_\_\_ did I like the decor.

and      ~~yet~~      but      nor      or      so



### 110.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

can   or   to   We   the   center.   go   leisure   shopping

*We can go shopping or to the leisure center.*

1 bed.   to   so   tired,   Kim   went   feeling   was   she

2 nor   live   at   doesn't   son   My   my   daughter.   home,   does

3 planning   I   was   go   I   my   forgot   but   to   swimsuit.   swimming,

4 grandchildren.   still   76,   yet   his   with   he   soccer   Len's   plays

## 111

## Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions are used to connect words, phrases, and clauses of unequal importance. They're used to say why, where, or when something happens.



### 111.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Jeremy started his own business

because he likes bird-watching.

1 The children ran out to play

even though he worked hard for it.

2 We bought Jim some binoculars

so that he could work for himself.

3 Adam failed his test,

as soon as it stopped raining.

4 Someone stole my purse

when he gets home from work.

5 Sam usually eats

while I was at the restaurant.



### 111.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

You need to enter your password **in order to** / ~~so that~~ access your account.

- 1 Eli decided to go jogging, **so that** / **even though** it was raining.
- 2 Ella put on some sunscreen **because** / **so that** she didn't get sunburned.
- 3 **When** / **While** I finish this report, I'll give you a hand.
- 4 You need a passport **in order to** / **so that** enter most countries.
- 5 **Even though** / **Because** I prefer coffee, I decided to have a cup of tea.
- 6 Paolo decided to have a nap **although** / **because** he was feeling tired.
- 7 I made the dinner **when** / **while** my wife cleaned our apartment.





### 111.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS IN THE PANEL

Regina called her parents as soon as her boyfriend proposed.

- 1 I read a newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ I was waiting for the train.
- 2 My dad bought some paint \_\_\_\_\_ he can decorate the kitchen.
- 3 I'm not going out \_\_\_\_\_ I've finished my homework.
- 4 Sally's moving to Spain, \_\_\_\_\_ she can't speak Spanish.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ you've written the report, can you send me a copy?

~~as soon as~~  
When  
even though  
while  
so that  
until



### 111.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Yuri got burned **so** he stayed in the sun too long.

*Yuri got burned because he stayed in the sun too long.*



- 1 The concert **begins** as soon as the singer **will arrive**.



- 2 **Even although** I arrived early, there were no tickets left.



- 3 Miguela is learning to juggle **in order for** impress her friends.



- 4 Can you give me a call when **you will arrive**?



- 5 I usually eat **while** my roommate gets home.



- 6 I went to the supermarket **for** buy some groceries.



## 112

## More linking words

Some words can be used to show a relationship between two sentences or parts of a sentence. This can be cause, effect, emphasis, contrast, or comparison.



## 112.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Bill loves going fishing, just like his dad.

My trip to the Azores was ruined because of the bad weather.

Andy is tall, whereas his cousin is quite short.

I like visiting the mountains, especially in the winter.



## 112.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I love reading novels,

1 Selma has curly brown hair,

2 Due to the bad snow,

3 As no one bought any tickets,

4 Andy hated the movie,

5 People in Japan drive on the left,

6 We had to drive slowly

just as her grandmother did.

all the trains this afternoon are delayed.

especially murder mysteries.

whereas we drive on the right here.

because of the icy conditions.

we've canceled tonight's show.

though I thought it was okay.



### 112.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I love to travel, **especially** / ~~notably~~ to hot countries.

- 1 Lianne loves football, **whereas** / **hence** her brother hates it.
- 2 I was late for the interview **because** / **because of** the traffic.
- 3 The professor was sick. **As a result** / **Especially**, the lecture was postponed.
- 4 Frank is a zookeeper, **yet** / **since** he is terrified of mice.
- 5 I get on well with Saul, **so** / **because** we are going on vacation together.



### 112.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE LINKING WORDS IN THE PANEL



Ellie prefers to wear smart clothes,  
~~whereas~~ Dan likes to dress casual.



3 There are a lot of environmental problems  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the bad pollution.



1 Magda loves gardening, \_\_\_\_\_ in  
 the spring.



4 \_\_\_\_\_ her music teacher,  
 Selma became a great pianist.



2 Omar visited Rome \_\_\_\_\_ he  
 loves ancient history.



5 I wanted to come this morning,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets had sold out.

because

~~whereas~~

Thanks to

especially

because of

but



## 113

## Linking words overview

Conjunctions are linking words that describe the relationship between two parts of a sentence. They can be coordinating or subordinating.



### 113.1 WRITE THE LINKING WORDS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

#### COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

*or*

#### SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

nor

in order that

after

so

and

even though

but

~~or~~

because

although



### 113.2 MARK THE USE OF THE CONJUNCTION IN EACH SENTENCE

Go home **as soon as** you're finished.

reason

condition

time

1 Jo reads **while** she travels to work.

time

reason

cause

2 I was an actor **before** I worked here.

condition

time

contrast

3 I wore a hat **so that** I don't get burned.

contrast

time

reason

4 Take a sweater **so** you don't get cold.

time

cause

reason

6 Paula took a map **in case** she got lost.

cause

contrast

condition

5 I got a hot dog **because** I was hungry.

contrast

cause

reason

7 We will go running **unless** it rains.

reason

condition

time



### 113.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

though promised. even called Carla hasn't she

*Carla hasn't called even though she promised.*

1 before to home. have I an email go send I

2 long You it. as as after can you my borrow look laptop

3 to clean can't go you You party room. unless your the



### 113.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Please wait here until the doctor **will be** ready for you.

*Please wait here until the doctor is ready for you.*



1 Leo screamed **while** he saw the spider in the bathroom.



2 Toby doesn't know what he'll do after **he'll leave** school.



3 Emma put on her coat **so** she was feeling cold.



4 I was planning to go for a walk, **and** it started raining.



5 I'll call you as soon as **I will know** any news.



# 114 Prefixes

Prefixes are small groups of letters which can be added to the start of many words to give them different meanings.

## 114.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I much prefer nonfiction, such as biographies, to fiction.

I'm worried about John. He's really overdoing it at work.

My girlfriend disapproves of me eating fast food.

I had a lot of fun with my coworkers at the office party.

## 114.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

It's ~~impossible~~ / ~~unpossible~~ to start your own business without making sacrifices.

- ① The police are looking for a man in his ~~mid-twenties~~ / ~~post-twenties~~.
- ② I've ~~misplaced~~ / ~~displaced~~ my glasses. Have you seen them?
- ③ The actor's performance was ~~prestandard~~ / ~~substandard~~.
- ④ It was ~~inresponsible~~ / ~~irresponsible~~ to drive so quickly.
- ⑤ Clara is trying to ~~disprove~~ / ~~misprove~~ the allegations against her.
- ⑥ The teacher said their behavior was ~~unacceptable~~ / ~~inacceptable~~.
- ⑦ The student's handwriting was quite ~~inlegible~~ / ~~illegible~~.





### 114.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PREFIXES IN THE PANEL

The book is coming out next week, but you can pre order it now.

- 1 We found Alexandra's cakes totally \_\_\_\_\_ resistible.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ read your name. I thought it said Davies, not Davis.
- 3 Les failed the exam, but he can \_\_\_\_\_ sit next semester.
- 4 Andy was \_\_\_\_\_ honest about being fluent in Portuguese.
- 5 Emily was struggling to \_\_\_\_\_ tie her shoelaces.
- 6 It's \_\_\_\_\_ legal to drive without wearing a seat belt.
- 7 This cake is really \_\_\_\_\_ cooked. It's almost raw inside.
- 8 Don't be so \_\_\_\_\_ patient. The train will come soon.

im  
dis  
~~pre~~  
under  
ir  
un  
il  
re  
mis



### 114.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Katia is so **unpolite**. She never says "please".

*Katia is so impolite. She never says "please".*

- 1 I realized I had the wrong key when I couldn't **dislock** the door.

---

- 2 Ed's so **inreliable**. He's always late.

---

- 3 You can **preapply** for the course next year.

---

- 4 Ola was **incertain** what to think about Jim's haircut.

---

- 5 I think she **overcharged** us. It should have cost more.

---

# 115 Suffixes

Suffixes are small groups of letters which can be added to the end of many words to give them different meanings.



## 115.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

We were all mystified by

really useful for storing our documents.

1 This wooden box should be

accused of incompetence.

2 Karl's dog looks dangerous,

my uncle's sudden disappearance.

3 Our accountant has been

and thinks things will deteriorate.

4 The evening's entertainment

but it's actually quite harmless.

5 My brother's a pessimist

included some wonderful music.



## 115.2 WRITE THE SUFFIXES FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

### ADJECTIVES

*-able / -ible*

### VERBS

### NOUNS

-al/-ial    -en    -ate    ~~-able / -ible~~    -ist /-ian    -less    -ism    -ance /-ence  
 -ity/-ty    -ful    -ify    -ic/-tic/-ical    -dom    -ize    -ous    -er/-or



### 115.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Winning the lottery is a rare **occurrence** / ~~occurence~~.



1 Alan works for a **managment** / **management** recruitment company.



2 The café serves a selection of **seasonnal** / **seasonal** vegetables.



3 The fish are **plentiful** / **plentyful** in local rivers.



4 Kids love taking **inflatable** / **inflateable** toys to the beach.



5 I found the music festival very **enjoiable** / **enjoyable**.



6 She always shows great **commitment** / **commitment** to her students.



### 115.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the manager to Our redundancies. stop powerless is

*Our manager is powerless to stop the redundancies.*

1 express We appreciation for to all your work. our want

2 is The comfortable. new really couch

3 city. my is problem real Unemployment a in



## 116

## Easily confused phrases

In English, there are several phrases which sound or look similar, but have different meanings. It is important not to get these confused.



### 116.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I'll never get used to the new software

after living in the countryside.

1 It's difficult getting used to the city

afternoon at the salon across the road.

2 I'm getting my hair cut this

they've introduced at work.

3 Bill got used to the weather

on the left in Britain.

4 Sian's getting new

in Australia surprisingly quickly.

5 Gill's still not used to driving

about every 10 years.

6 We have our house painted

windows fitted in her apartment.



### 116.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Joel is used to the cold. He grew up in Finland.

I'm not used to the new photocopier yet.

You can get your car washed at the gas station.

It took me a while to get used to the cold water in the lake.



### 116.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Will you get your car fixed before the trip?



Will you get your car fix before the trip?



1 I hated working nights at first, but then I got used to it.  
I hated working nights at first, but then I am used to it.



2 Olga grew up in Moscow, so she used to cold winters.  
Olga grew up in Moscow, so she's used to cold winters.



3 I am used to work as a lab technician before I became a teacher.  
I used to work as a lab technician before I became a teacher.



4 Nico has his hair cut at the barbershop on Main Street.  
Nico has cut his hair at the barbershop on Main Street.



5 I got my locks changed after our place was broken into.  
I got changed my locks after our place was broken into.



### 116.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

living

isn't

on

own.

his

used

Alfie

to

*Alfie isn't used to living on his own.*

1 a on delivered gets Sheila Fridays. pizza always

2 living in country. not I'm to a used rainy

3 cleaned a I once teeth month. have hygienist my the by

## 117

## Sequencing and organizing

There are a number of words and phrases in English which help to explain the order of events. They can also be used to organize text and make it easier to understand.



## 117.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

overall

=

*in conclusion*

① for example

=

② furthermore

=

③ next

=

④ first of all

=

then

to begin with

for instance

~~in conclusion~~

moreover



## 117.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

First of all, I find my recipe

in a bowl and mix them together.

① Then I switch on the

into a baking pan.

② Next, I put all the ingredients

book and kitchen utensils.

③ After that, I pour the mixture

oven and find my ingredients.

④ You can add extra ingredients,

the oven for about 25 minutes.

⑤ Finally, put the cake into

such as nuts or dried fruit.





### 117.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to all, you decide you live. First of where should want

*First of all, you should decide where you want to live.*

1 type should the you of choose Furthermore, want. house you

2 an house? to you a For example, live do want in apartment or

3 balcony? the instance, a property Does have, for


4 buying should house. conclusion, a before think carefully In you




### 117.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



~~Firstly of all~~ / **First of all**, forests are home to so many local species.

1  **Additional** / **Additionally**, they provide employment to many people in the region.

2  **Farthermore** / **Furthermore**, many species are in danger of extinction.

3  **Meantime** / **Meanwhile**, the logging companies continue to destroy vast areas.

4  **In conclusion** / **By conclusion**, forests are in need of urgent protection.

# Correcting and changing the subject

Set words and phrases can be used to correct someone, disagree, change the subject, or concede a point. They often come at the beginning of the sentence.



## 118.1 MATCH THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT RESPONSES

This soup is really delicious.

1 I really like our new teacher.

2 I thought Kelly's dress was lovely.

3 I think zoos are great places.

4 The new library is so ugly.

5 The movie's ending was such a shock.

Really? I find him quite dull.

I didn't think it suited her, actually.

To be honest, I think it's rather bland.

I thought it was predictable, to be honest.

I'm afraid I disagree. I don't like them.

I don't agree. I think it looks great.



## 118.2 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT

I think this music is by Beethoven.



You're wrong. It's by Mozart.

Actually, I think it's by Mozart.

1 I love visiting the countryside on the weekend.



To be honest, I much prefer the city.

To be honestly, I much prefer the city.

2

That was a fantastic game tonight, wasn't it?



I don't agree. It was incredibly boring.

I agree. It was incredibly boring.

3

The metro system in this town is great.



I'm worried I disagree. It's really overcrowded.

I'm afraid I disagree. It's really overcrowded.



### 118.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

was long, be thought I novel to latest honest. too Claudia's

*I thought Claudia's latest novel was too long, to be honest.*

1 a really she's still Anyway, writer. good

2 don't I I'm she think is. afraid

3 was very is As saying, I she talented. I think

4 think agree you, with actually. don't I I

5 have read way, her By novel? the first you ever

6 much. point a You costing about have too books her

7 was thought Actually, awful. character main the I

8 about see character. your main point the I

9 Claudia's you told new novel! like I wouldn't I



## 119

## Deciding and hedging

English uses a number of words and phrases to discuss the different sides of an argument or to make sentences sound less definite.



## 119.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



It seems my car has broken down again.

Fishing is arguably the most relaxing activity in the world.

I don't like modern art. However, I don't mind this picture.

It would appear that the cat has knocked over the vase.



## 119.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

In spite of the terrible weather,

1 Although the restaurant is

2 However, whenever I go there,

3 Of course, all the dishes

4 On the one hand, it's very expensive,

5 I might go out tonight.

6 Despite feeling tired,

nearby, I rarely eat there.

are made using the finest ingredients.

I will go to the restaurant.

but on the other hand, it's good quality.

I always have a good time.

I decided to go out with my friends.

Alternatively, I could relax in front of the TV.



### 119.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

our satisfied. surveys that very Our are customers suggest

*Our surveys suggest that our customers are very satisfied.*

1 the haven't completed It all paperwork. you seems

2 actor. could a good be really potentially She

3 appears that to lock office. It the up forgot someone

4 To certain believe a is Manuel extent, right. we



### 119.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

It looks that the thief entered through that window.

It seems that the thief entered through that window.

1 The figures suggest that we are losing a lot of customers.

The figures recommend that we are losing a lot of customers.

2 Despite of the delays, I enjoyed myself thoroughly.

Despite the delays, I enjoyed myself thoroughly.

3 In the one hand, I'm rich. In the other hand, I'm not very happy.

On the one hand, I'm rich. On the other hand, I'm not very happy.


4 To some extend, crime has increased in the past year.


To some extent, crime has increased in the past year.


# 120 Making conversation


Many words and phrases are used in English to ease the flow of conversation. These techniques are often called organizing, backchanneling, or stalling.


## 120.1 MARK THE BEST REPLY TO EACH STATEMENT


1 Shall we paint the wall pink?  

 Hmm, I think I'd prefer purple.   
 Hmm, I'll have a coffee, please.

2 Do you think I should apply for a promotion?  

 You know, there's a new café you should try.   
 You know, that's a great idea.


3 Can you speak Japanese?  

 I mean, it's almost time to leave.   
 Sort of. I can hold a basic conversation.


4 Would you be able to work late tonight?  

 Well, I do have plans later.   
 Of course. It's too short notice.


5 Can you bake me 200 cakes by tomorrow?  

 Now, I hadn't thought of that.   
 Let's see... I could probably make you 100.


6 I've just bought a new car. It's a sports car.  

 Wow! That's amazing.   
 Good question. It's very nice.

## 120.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

1 Right, I'm going to talk about  my team on large projects.

2 Let's see... I've been working  that the project is a success.

3 Well, I enjoy working with  the new software we're introducing.

4 So, I think we can all agree  in IT for more than 10 years.





### 120.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

thinking I'm of Paris. to moving So,

*So, I'm thinking of moving to Paris.*

1 to What going Really? there? you are do

2 I'd work a as waiter. like to Well,

3 work. know, be that might You hard

4 will French. I practice suppose I my but so,

5 French? Of speak But course. do you any

6 like Good question. I'd but yet, Not to.

7 to right. do? else do What want you Oh

8 travel like to France. I'd see. Let's around

9 sounds Wow! great idea. That a like

# Answers

**NOTE:** Some of the following answers can be written in different forms, for example with or without contractions.

## 01

### 1.1

- 1 Tony **makes** a huge breakfast for his family on Sundays.
- 2 I usually **eat** my lunch at 1pm at an Italian restaurant.
- 3 Fiona **meets** her friends at a café on Thursday evenings.
- 4 We sometimes **play** tennis with our friends on Saturday mornings.
- 5 My cousin **starts** work at 6am every morning.
- 6 The shop assistant **leaves** work at 6pm in the evening.
- 7 You **drink** a lot of coffee every morning.
- 8 Paolo usually **reads** a book in the evenings.

### 1.2

- 1 Greg works in a factory.
- 2 My dad watches TV every evening.
- 3 Michel plays the piano beautifully.
- 4 Jane brushes her hair in the morning.
- 5 Selma goes shopping after work.
- 6 Imran washes his clothes on Sunday.
- 7 Mary teaches French at a college.

### 1.3

- 1 I **am** a doctor at the local hospital.
- 2 Vicky **is** my eldest child.
- 3 We **are** from a town in Scotland.
- 4 Both my parents **are** lawyers.
- 5 You **are** a very good friend.
- 6 I **am** an American.
- 7 That policeman **is** so tall.
- 8 She **is** twenty-three years old.
- 9 It **is** cold outside.
- 10 I **am** fifteen today.
- 11 Our cat **is** black and white.
- 12 We **are** very excited.
- 13 They **are** students from France.
- 14 Jim **is** an architect.
- 15 My sister-in-law **is** from Japan.
- 16 I **am** so hungry!
- 17 You **are** very lazy.
- 18 My children **are** so tired.
- 19 I **am** forty-three years old.
- 20 They **are** late for work.
- 21 Claudia and Paolo **are** Italian.
- 22 My grandfather **is** retired.
- 23 We **are** from Pakistan.
- 24 Paul **is** disappointed.

### 1.4

- 1 Jack **has** a new car.
- 2 Jennifer **has** Abbie's bag.
- 3 We **have** a beautiful farm.

- 4 I **have** three sisters.
- 5 Bob **has** toothache.
- 6 My house **has** a large garage.
- 7 They **have** a new laptop.
- 8 We **have** so many books.
- 9 My dad **has** red hair.
- 10 You **have** an old phone.
- 11 My neighbors **have** a daughter.
- 12 Juan's house **has** three floors.
- 13 That bird **has** big eyes.
- 14 I **have** a new baby.
- 15 We both **have** headaches.
- 16 They **have** the same dress.
- 17 My grandparents **have** chickens.
- 18 You **have** a friendly cat.
- 19 My town **has** two museums.
- 20 Yuko **has** a painful back.
- 21 Our dogs **have** lots of toys.
- 22 We **have** an English class tonight.
- 23 Vineetha **has** a new haircut.
- 24 I **have** dinner at 6pm every day.

### 1.5

- 1 Brad goes camping in the forest every summer.
- 2 Hannah takes beautiful photos of the places she visits.
- 3 Emil leaves the office at 6pm each day.

### 1.6

- 1 I **start** work at 9am during the week.
- 2 You **are** an engineer.
- 3 Maria **has** coffee with Jules in the morning.
- 4 They **go** to work by train.
- 5 My dad **is** 67 years old.
- 6 Robert **finishes** work at 7pm.
- 7 We **have** an English lesson later.
- 8 Paul often **watches** a film in the evening.
- 9 Emma **goes** to bed early on Sundays.

## 02

### 2.1

- 1 She is not a doctor.
- 2 We are not from New Zealand.
- 3 My dad is not American.
- 4 They are not my dogs.
- 5 You are not Egyptian.
- 6 This is not my computer.
- 7 I am not an engineer.

### 2.2

- 1 You **do not** work in the library.
- 2 He **does not** eat meat.
- 3 Val **does not** watch TV in the evening.
- 4 I **do not** play football very often.
- 5 We **do not** get up early on Saturdays.
- 6 My grandparents **do not** have a car.
- 7 Nico **does not** work in the factory.
- 8 She **does not** go to work on Fridays.
- 9 I **do not** go to restaurants very often.
- 10 You **do not** have a cat.
- 11 They **do not** work outside.

### 2.3

- 1 He's not a teacher.  
He isn't a teacher.
- 2 Carla's not very tall.  
Carla isn't very tall.
- 3 You're not from Australia.  
You aren't from Australia.
- 4 They're not farmers.  
They aren't farmers.
- 5 We're not happy.  
We aren't happy.
- 6 You're not lawyers.  
You aren't lawyers.
- 7 She's not a doctor.  
She isn't a doctor.
- 8 It's not very cold outside.  
It isn't very cold outside.

### 2.4

- 1 I don't like Sam's cooking.
- 2 You don't look very happy.
- 3 Antonio does not live in Madrid.
- 4 Phil doesn't drive a car.
- 5 I'm not a doctor.
- 6 Diana doesn't have a computer.
- 7 I don't like cats.
- 8 Paolo does not get up at 6am.
- 9 My dad doesn't feel well.
- 10 They aren't from China.
- 11 My friends don't like chess.

### 2.5

- 1 Amy **doesn't work** as a receptionist in our office.
- 2 I **don't like** going to the health center.
- 3 Your company **isn't** very successful.
- 4 You **don't play** the violin very well.
- 5 Jean **doesn't cook** the dinner in the evening.
- 6 This TV show **isn't** very interesting.
- 7 Sonia and Rick **don't live** in Paris.
- 8 My son **isn't** a firefighter.
- 9 Our house **isn't** very big.
- 10 Sandra **doesn't work** late on Fridays.
- 11 My husband and I **don't relax** on weekends.
- 12 Edith and Sam **don't like** dancing in their free time.

## 03

### 3.1

- 1 **Are** you the new teacher?
- 2 **Is** she your sister?
- 3 **Are** we nearly home?
- 4 **Am** I on the list?
- 5 **Are** your dogs friendly?
- 6 Where **is** the front door?
- 7 **Is** Carlo still a teacher?
- 8 **Are** we late for the party?
- 9 Where **are** my shoes?
- 10 **Is** that Shelly's new car?
- 11 Who **is** the manager here?
- 12 **Am** I too late for the concert?
- 13 When **is** your birthday?
- 14 **Is** he here for the presentation?
- 15 Where **is** the bathroom?
- 16 **Am** I supposed to be at work?



- 11 Why **are** they angry?
- 12 Is it time to eat yet?
- 13 **Are** they coming to the seminar?

### 3.2

- 1 **Does** Laura have a brother?
- 2 **Do** they know your address?
- 3 **Does** Craig still live in Dublin?
- 4 Where **does** your mother work?
- 5 **Do** they know your father?
- 6 **Does** the restaurant serve fish?
- 7 **Do** you still have my book?
- 8 **Does** your house have a garage?
- 9 **Do** we have enough time?
- 10 How **does** Ben travel to work?
- 11 **Do** your parents have a car?
- 12 When **does** the lesson end?
- 13 **Do** you work on Saturdays?
- 14 **Does** she play any instruments?
- 15 What **do** you want for dinner?
- 16 **Do** I need to wear a dress?
- 17 What **does** he want this time?
- 18 **Do** they know what time it is?
- 19 Where **does** she buy her clothes?

### 3.3

- 1 Does Danielle play baseball very often?
- 2 Do you know how to play the electric guitar?
- 3 Does your daughter know how to drive a car?
- 4 What time do you get up in the morning?

### 3.4

- 1 Does she like going to the theater?
- 2 Does Carlo like Chinese food?
- 3 Do you like gardening?
- 4 Does he know how to play chess?
- 5 Does Cleo have breakfast every morning?
- 6 Does Jim have a lot of homework this weekend?
- 7 Do they live in London?
- 8 Does it rain often here?
- 9 Does Peter enjoy taking photos?
- 10 Does Sally know how to swim?
- 11 Do they play golf on Saturdays?

## 04

### 4.1

- 1 Michelle is visiting a gallery.
- 2 Pedro is hiking in the mountains.
- 3 Martin is cooking dinner for his family.

### 4.2

- 1 You **are wearing** a beautiful red dress.
- 2 Matilda **is reading** a travel book about Brazil.
- 3 My cat **is climbing** the apple tree.
- 4 I **am reading** such an interesting book.
- 5 Hetty and Paula **are drinking** some orange juice.
- 6 Phil **is practicing** for his piano lesson.

### 4.3

- 1 Clara **is trying** on some new shoes.
- 2 I **am writing** a letter to my girlfriend.
- 3 Sanjay **is learning** to drive.
- 4 Mel and Tim **are getting married** today.

1 Robin **isn't studying** for the French exam this afternoon.

2 Sam and Ashwin **are playing** baseball at the park.

3 My sister's friend **is performing** on stage now.

### 4.4

1 Sam and Pete aren't playing cards in the living room.

2 The children eat pizza once a week.

3 Julian is wearing a suit for the meeting.

### 4.5

1 Are they going **to the festival**?

2 What are we **eating for dinner**?

3 Is it **snowing outside**?

4 Why is Lisa **wearing such fancy clothes**?

### 4.6

1 Chris isn't playing football today.

2 Are your kids watching a football game?

3 My wife is visiting her friend this afternoon.

4 Where is Selma living at the moment?

5 Joe isn't wearing a tie today.

### 4.7

1 Are they driving to the beach?

2 Are you going swimming?

3 Is she watching a movie?

4 Is Nelson going shopping?

5 Is Ben listening to classical music?

6 Is Chrissie climbing the tree?

7 Are Sven and Olly singing?

8 Are you drinking apple juice?

9 Are they are playing tennis?

10 Is my son reading a book?

11 Is Pavel speaking Russian?

12 Are you are wearing a dress?

### 4.8

1 I'm not going to the zoo.

2 The dog isn't chasing a cat.

3 They aren't walking their dog.

4 Angela isn't wearing a dress.

5 We aren't playing chess.

6 I'm not eating Chinese food.

7 James isn't wearing your shirt.

8 You aren't reading a book.

9 She isn't cleaning her room.

10 Ed and Gus aren't watching a movie.

11 I'm not speaking French.

12 It isn't raining outside.

## 05

### 5.1

1 Annabelle **explores** caves in her free time.

2 João **doesn't like** dogs. He's really scared of them.

3 Is Dimitri still **building** the garage wall?

4 Brendan **loves** watching comedies on TV in the evenings.

5 Sid and Les **work** at the beauty salon.

### 5.2

1 Kit **goes** scuba-diving with her friends on Fridays.

2 Ben and Kelly **are dancing** at the club tonight.

3 Sai **puts** the dishes in the dishwasher each evening.

4 Bruce **is waiting** to go for a walk.

### 5.3

1 Mary **doesn't send** letters often, but she **is writing** one to her mother now.

2 I **am working** from home today, but usually I **work** in an office.

3 We usually **go** to Spain on vacation, but this year we **are going** to Mexico.

4 Helen **works** in a primary school. **She's teaching** math right now.

5 I **don't eat** meat very often, but tonight I'm **having** a steak.

6 It **doesn't rain** often in California, but today **it's pouring**.

7 My cousin **is performing** on stage now. I **love** her voice.

8 Rajiv **is wearing** a T-shirt now, but he always **wears** a shirt at work.

9 My dad **is sleeping** now. He **is** tired after the journey.

10 Juan normally **starts** work at 8am, but today **he's going** to the dentist.

11 Bob **is taking** a taxi to work today, but he usually **takes** the bus.

### 5.4

1 My brother doesn't **work on Friday afternoons**.

2 My mom usually bakes **a cake on the weekends**.

3 Where is your sister **living at the moment**?

4 Tom's new girlfriend **lives in a resort in Spain**.

5 What's dad cooking **in the kitchen**?

6 How often do you **play golf with your colleagues**?

### 5.5

1 Do you play soccer **on the weekend**?

2 Is Paula studying French at college?

3 Why is your dad wearing a suit today?

4 Clarissa usually works at home on Fridays.

### 5.6

1 Lou wakes up at 7am each morning.

2 Henry is performing at a country and western club tonight.

3 Tanya doesn't feel well, so she's not coming to the party.

### 5.7

1 Steve **reads** in bed before he **goes** to sleep.

2 Lisa and Tim **go** to the gym after work.

3 My mom **is playing** golf with her friend this afternoon.

4 Vernon **doesn't like** snakes. He really **hates** them.

5 We often **go** to the café by the park.

6 Craig **is walking** in the mountains with Rob this week.



## 06

## 6.1

write, draw, run, help, take, give, start, begin, work, send, listen, turn, come, read, smile

## 6.2

- Be careful on the wet floor!
- Take the second road on the right.
- Don't sit there! It's Andrew's chair.
- Let me help you with your bags, Vera.

## 6.3

- Turn right **at the crossroads**.
- Eat your **breakfast, Greg!**
- Give the cake **to Layla**.
- Please close **the window**.
- Let's go **to the theater**.
- Don't walk on **the grass**.
- Take the first **road on the left**.
- Don't touch **that vase!**

## 6.4

- Turn left after the library.
- Just give me a minute, please.
- Let's go to the swimming pool.
- Go straight ahead at the crossroads.
- Please close the door.
- Give the book to your brother.
- Don't sing so loudly!

## 07

## 7.1

- I **cleaned** my bedroom this morning.
- We **played** football in the afternoon.
- After his dinner, Alex **watched** a movie on TV.
- My wife **visited** her parents yesterday.
- Lucia **danced** with her friends at the party.

## 7.2

- Terry usually takes the metro to work, **but yesterday he walked instead**.
- I arrived at work early **so I checked my email**.
- In the morning we walked to **the old town and visited the museum**.
- Angela cried when she **heard the sad news**.
- We usually go to France **but last year we traveled around Russia**.
- Jemma washed the dishes **after she finished her dinner**.
- Roger listened to some music **then started reading his new book**.

## 7.3

- Amy felt sick, so she went to the doctor.
- I usually walk to the café, but yesterday I drove.
- Mia laughed when she heard Martin's joke.

## 7.4

- Simone **tried** to open the door, but it was completely stuck.
- Elena **decided** to wear a nice dress to the dinner party that evening.
- Chan **washed** the dishes after she and Dan had eaten.
- Stephan and Klara **hurried** to catch the last train home.
- The waiter **dropped** the dishes onto the floor.
- Megan **carried** the files into the office.

## 7.5

- Marilyn **went** with Clive to the exhibition at the gallery.
- I **saw** Phil and Dan at the party last night.
- Sheila **swam** across the lake to the island.
- I **drank** a large bottle of water after the race.
- We **drove** to a beautiful resort in the mountains.
- Carol **put** her cup down on the table.
- Seb **did** his homework on the bus to school.
- Omar **bought** a scarf for his wife at the market.
- She **drew** a beautiful picture of a cherry tree.

## 7.6

- You **were** at Paulina's party on Saturday.
- Joanna **was** very tired after the flight to Australia.
- My parents **were** delighted when I passed all my exams.
- There **were** so many people waiting to buy a ticket.
- I **was** upset when I lost my purse.
- Liam **was** a pilot for more than 40 years.
- There **was** a loud bang in the kitchen.
- My cousins **were** famous dancers in the 1990s.
- We **were** at the convention last year.

## 7.7

- Robin **wanted** to go skiing in the winter.
- Julie and Scott **drank** a lot of coffee at the café.
- Eli **went** camping in the woods last summer.
- Jon **played** rugby on Saturday afternoon.
- I **watched** TV dramas until late last night.
- We **went** to a jazz club to listen to live music.
- Sadiq's dog **barked** in the yard all evening.
- The pollution in my city **was** very bad.
- Angelo **ate** an apple for his lunch.
- Kyle **made** his bed after getting up in the morning.
- Tina **played** the piano with her little brother.

## 08

## 8.1

- Emily didn't go to the party **because she felt tired**.
- The sports car cost a huge amount, **so we didn't buy it**.
- Ben was upset because **Jenny didn't call him on his birthday**.
- My uncle didn't enjoy the film **because he hates science fiction**.

① The teacher shouted at me **because I didn't do my homework**.

② Katie is very shy, so **she didn't talk to anyone at the party**.

## 8.2

- Zehra didn't play football yesterday. She went fishing.
- Michael did not like the burger he ordered, so he sent it back.
- I didn't go out last night; I stayed in and watched TV instead.

## 8.3

- There **weren't** enough sandwiches for everyone.
- I **did not finish** mowing the lawn because I was tired.
- The book **wasn't** interesting, so I watched TV instead.
- Joe **didn't make** enough potatoes for everyone.
- The students **didn't understand** the teacher.
- There **weren't** many people at the concert last night.
- It **wasn't** very warm outside, so we stayed at home.
- My brother **didn't enjoy** the movie very much.

## 8.4

- We **didn't speak** to Ellen.
- They **were** happy.
- They **weren't** late.
- I **waited** for Carl.
- Lola **did not understand**.
- Brendan **was** there.
- They **didn't pay** the bill.
- Hugh **talked** to me.
- Claire **didn't eat** the cake.
- She **went** swimming.

## 09

## 9.1

- Did Salvador win the lottery?
- Did Peter take a shower earlier?
- Did they drink all the juice?
- Did Nick wash the dishes?
- Did Sam buy a sports car?
- Did they build a new house?

## 9.2

- Was it very windy on the island?
- How was your band practice yesterday?
- Why was Xander late for the meeting?

## 9.3

- Did you take the dog for a walk?
- How did you get home last night?
- What was the food like in Greece?

## 9.4

- 1 Why were you both so late for work this morning?
- 2 Was Katie pleased with the present you got her?
- 3 Did you take any good photos while you were on vacation?
- 4 What was the weather like while you were in Greece?
- 5 Where did you buy that lovely suit, Vincent?

## 10

## 10.1

- 1 This time last year, Craig was on vacation in Hawaii.
- 2 I was decorating the kitchen on Wednesday evening.
- 3 I was mowing the lawn when you tried to call.

## 10.2

- 1 We were sunbathing when it began to rain.
- 2 When I met Tracy yesterday, she was wearing a lovely dress.
- 3 It was a beautiful day and the birds were singing in the trees.
- 4 I heard a loud bang when I was watching TV last night.
- 5 It started to rain while I was talking on the telephone.

## 10.3

- 1 We were hiking in the Alps this time last year.
- 2 Colm was driving to work when he saw a deer.
- 3 Who were you talking to when I saw you yesterday?
- 4 It was cloudy yesterday, but at least it wasn't raining again.

## 10.4

- 1 Mia visited Sydney while she was traveling around Australia.
- 2 The children were reading when I entered the classroom.
- 3 Ravi saw an old castle when he was walking through the forest.
- 4 The sun was shining when we set off on the journey home.

## 11

## 11.1

- 1 Daria has baked a delicious cake for everyone at the office.
- 2 My parents have decided to buy a little cottage in the country.
- 3 Ola has taken the day off and has gone to the new gallery in town.
- 4 We have decided when we're going to get married.

## 11.2

- 1 Hank hasn't opened the letter from his college yet.
- 2 My children have washed the car at last.
- 3 Kelly still hasn't cleaned her bedroom. It's so messy!
- 4 Danny has painted the bedroom and the living room.
- 5 Jess has visited Peru and Ecuador so far this year.

## 11.3

- 1 Fran and Leo have gone to the fair together.
- 2 Angelo has not cooked dinner for his family yet.
- 3 Jenny has cleaned all the windows in her apartment.
- 4 I have not met Nick's new girlfriend yet.
- 5 Morgan has watched this movie at least six times already.
- 6 Mr. Fernandez and his son have left the building.

## 11.4

REGULAR:

**wanted, watched, helped, walked, asked**

IRREGULAR:

**given, done, seen, swum, put**

## 11.5

- 1 I studied French in college a long time ago.
- 2 I haven't lived in Venezuela since 2009.
- 3 Kevin first visited Munich in 1997.
- 4 Enzo finished the report on Friday.
- 5 Sebastian has worked as a chef for 10 years.

## 11.6

- 1 Owen started work here in 2017.
- 2 I have spoken to Tina about this twice today already.
- 3 How many countries have you visited so far?
- 4 Gloria has never tried windsurfing before.
- 5 Fabio has lived in England for more than 15 years.

## 11.7

- 1 I've just been to the dentist for a filling.
- 2 They've gone to the library.
- 3 Yes, she's been shopping with her friends.
- 4 Yes, I've just been for a run.
- 5 No, she's gone for a walk with the dog.

## 11.8

- 1 Of course, I've visited it many times.
- 2 Yes, I tried it when I went to Athens last year.
- 3 Yes, I moved here in 1997.
- 4 Yes, I saw *Macbeth* when I went to London.
- 5 Yes, I've tried it twice since I've been in Malaysia.

## 12

## 12.1

- 1 Val has been learning to dance tango for more than six months.
- 2 Jess has been running today and looks very tired.
- 3 Have you been living at this address for a long time?
- 4 I've been eating too much cake lately, so I want to go on a diet.
- 5 I haven't been running for ages, so I don't feel very fit.

## 12.2

- 1 Colin has been looking for a new house all year.
- 2 My brother's been painting the kitchen since Sunday.
- 3 It's been raining for more than a week.

## 12.3

- 1 I have been cleaning the house because my parents are coming tomorrow.
- 2 You have been building that wall all day. Are you nearly finished?
- 3 Joe has been fishing all afternoon, but he hasn't caught anything yet.
- 4 We haven't been playing tennis together for very long.
- 5 How long have you been training for the marathon, Jon?
- 6 Josh has been painting a lovely landscape this afternoon.
- 7 Matt and Heather have been studying for their exam all evening.
- 8 I haven't been reading this book for very long.
- 9 Jane has been traveling all summer.
- 10 Has Robin been walking all day? He looks exhausted.
- 11 I have been trying to cook a new recipe today.
- 12 Ed hasn't been feeling well, so I told him to go to the doctor.
- 13 My friend has been touring Europe with his band.
- 14 My manager has been sleeping at his desk all afternoon.

## 13

## 13.1

- 1 The play had started by the time we arrived at the theater.
- 2 Ben liked Sal, even though he had met her only a few times.
- 3 I hadn't eaten Indian food before, so I didn't know what to expect.
- 4 Justin called his sister, but she had gone to bed.
- 5 Edith hadn't seen her niece for years so was delighted when she visited.
- 6 Amber felt so happy that she had passed her exam.



- My uncle was upset because I **hadn't called** him recently.
- Christine worked late, because she **hadn't finished** her project yet.
- There were a lot of delays because a bus **had broken down**.
- When we arrived at the station, we discovered the train **had left**.
- Amy couldn't take her flight because she **had forgotten** her passport.
- My son looked bored because he **had been inside** the house all day.
- The house looked shabby because we **hadn't painted** it in years.
- Jane was excited about going to Rome. She **hadn't been** to Italy before.

### 13.2

- Pete had almost finished tiling the wall by the time I got home.
- I had just sat down with my drink when it started to rain.
- Janine felt really cold because she'd been outside too long.
- Tony had called for a taxi an hour earlier, but it still hadn't arrived.

### 13.3

- Craig **arrived** late to work because he **had missed** the train.
- Marie **hadn't ridden** a bike for years, so she **found** it difficult.
- Dana **was** delighted that she **had passed** her driving test at last.
- James **had prepared** breakfast when Caitlin **got up**.
- She **had visited** San Francisco once before, when she **was** seven.
- I **hadn't met** Karl before, but we **had** lots in common.
- We **had seen** the play once before, but we **enjoyed** it anyway.

## 14

### 14.1

- Maya had been working here for five years when I started.
- It had been raining for a week before the sun came out.
- I got sunburned because I'd been lying in the sun all day.
- We went to see that movie everyone had been talking about at work.
- Vlad had been studying English for a year when he moved to Toronto.
- My computer hadn't been working properly for ages, so I bought a new one.
- We only found the hotel after we'd been driving for more than an hour.
- I'd been training for years before I won my first marathon.

- Carol had been cooking all morning, so she was exhausted.
- I went to the doctor because I hadn't been feeling well all week.

### 14.2

- Marion had been learning Spanish **for six months before she went to Spain**.
- The forest looked beautiful because **it had been snowing all night**.
- Kelly had been practicing all week, **so her performance was perfect**.
- Clive had been complaining **about the bad smell all week**.

### 14.3

- Nina **had been shopping** all morning and **needed** a coffee.
- Carla **had been living** in Paris for 10 years when she **met** Liam.
- Chris **felt** exhausted because he **had been playing** football all day.
- Phil **had been watching** TV when the telephone **rang**.
- Jill **had been feeling** ill all day, so she **went** to bed early.
- The kids **had been watching** TV all afternoon because it **was** so cold outside.
- Jo **had been studying** for years before she **passed** the exam.
- Ahmed **had been working** for hours before he finally **left** the office.

## 15

### 15.1

- I **used to live** in London, but I moved to Paris 10 years ago.
- When I was a teenager, I **would go** fishing on Saturdays. Now I prefer photography.
- There **didn't use to be** any factories here. There were beautiful woods.
- When I worked, I **would get up** at 5am. Now I relax in the morning.
- Did you **use to ride** a bike when you were a child?

### 15.2

- Dana used to play soccer with her friends when she was a child.
- Chris didn't use to have such long hair.
- I visited Prague three times when I was a child.
- Maria used to believe in ghosts when she was little.
- I used to know Andre well when I was a student.

### 15.3

- I would **try** to save money when I was at college.
- My brother **used** to read comics when he was a kid.
- Did you **use to** play computer games when you were young?
- I **didn't use** to read novels, but I really enjoy them now.

## 16

### 16.1

- When I saw Sam earlier this morning, he **was mopping** the floor.
- Ron and Tim **have worked** at the salon for more than 10 years.
- Danny **didn't understand** what the man was saying.
- When I was a kid, I **used to be scared** of spiders.
- I love travel, but I **haven't been** to New York before.
- I discovered the loggers **had cut down** almost all the trees.
- Pavel went outside and **built** a snowman in the park.
- We were delayed, and the concert **had started** by the time we arrived.
- Ash **had been studying** Spanish for years before he moved to Madrid.
- We **have been hiking** all morning. Let's have a break, shall we?
- It was a beautiful day, and the sun **was shining** through the window.

### 16.2

- How long have you **been studying English**?
- Pedro has been living in his apartment for **more than six months**.
- It had been raining all night, **and the garden was flooded**.
- Chrissie loves trying new dishes, **but she's never tried Vietnamese food**.
- Peter was walking home **when he bumped into an old school friend**.
- Did you go to the new exhibition **at the museum last weekend**?

### 16.3

- Aditya wasn't feeling well, so he went home.
- You used to go to my school, didn't you?
- How long have you been working in this office?
- Ed had been working here for ages when I met him.

### 16.4

- When I arrived at the venue, I realized I **hadn't brought** the tickets.
- By the time we arrived at the theater, the play **had begun**.
- I **haven't seen** that movie yet. Jon told me it's great.
- Sophie **has been cooking** all morning. She's exhausted.
- Harry looked great. He **was wearing** his new suit.
- Natalia **was sunbathing** when she noticed a monkey in a tree.
- I **didn't go** to the party on Friday. I was at a concert.
- Len **has been decorating**. He has paint on his clothes.
- Jamie **had been practicing** for months before yesterday's show.



- 10 I **called** my dad this morning to wish him a happy birthday.  
 11 Bill **was taking** a bath when he heard a knock at the door.

### 16.5

- 1 I was sleeping soundly when my alarm clock rang.  
 2 After we'd eaten, Marco helped me to clear the table.  
 3 I've been dreaming of going abroad all year.

### 16.6

- 1 It **was** my gran's birthday yesterday.  
 2 I **used to** like mathematics, but now I prefer chemistry.  
 3 When I walked into the room, Juan **was talking** on the phone.  
 4 We were sailing to Crete when I **saw** a dolphin.  
 5 You look hot, Karen. **Have you been running?**  
 6 When Dan **had finished** the cleaning, he went to the park.  
 7 We **were** lost for three weeks before the helicopter spotted us.  
 8 **Have you lived** in this house for a long time?  
 9 I **cycled** all the way to London yesterday.  
 10 We **were walking** through the woods when we saw a bear.  
 11 When Ben was a child, he **wanted** to be an astronaut.  
 12 **Did you enjoy** your vacation last week?

## 17

### 17.1

- 1 Prediction  
 2 Future plan  
 3 Prediction  
 4 Future plan  
 5 Future plan  
 6 Prediction  
 7 Future plan

### 17.2

- 1 Ted told me he's going to travel around Egypt next year.  
 2 Ben's brought his guitar. I think he's going to sing.  
 3 Cal has the ball. Is he going to score?  
 4 I think Angela is going to fall off the ladder!  
 5 Oh dear! The waiter's going to drop all the plates.  
 6 Sam's writing on the wall. His dad's going to be furious.  
 7 Look at those clouds. I think it's going to rain.

### 17.3

- 1 Is Gerald going to win the race?  
 2 Is Aziz going to sail to Ireland?  
 3 Is Fiona going to teach us about statistics?  
 4 Are we going to run out of milk soon?

### 17.4

- 1 My son **is going to cook** for us tonight.  
 2 **Is Jess going to study** French at college?  
 3 Katie **isn't going to** teach us next year.  
 4 It looks like it **is going to** rain again.  
 5 **Are they going to** sing another song for us?

- 6 I'm **going to** sell my bike. I never use it.  
 7 Emily **is going to** fix the shower for us.  
 8 Pete **isn't going to play** rugby with us today.  
 9 Dad's **going to get** perfume for Mom's birthday again.

## 18

### 18.1

- 1 Ronaldo **won't go** to bed before midnight.  
 2 The kids **will have** a great time in Florida next summer.  
 3 You **will love** the new coat I just bought for the winter.  
 4 Mia **won't eat** anything with meat in it.  
 5 My car broke down, so I **will take** the train to work today.  
 6 Eric **will want** to eat steak and fries for his dinner.  
 7 Noah **will win** the 400m race at the track competition.  
 8 My children **won't like** that flavor of ice cream.  
 9 Charlotte **will marry** her boyfriend this year.  
 10 I **will stay** at home and watch TV tonight.  
 11 Arnie **will go** swimming with Bob and Sue.

### 18.2

- 1 Decision  
 2 Prediction  
 3 Promise  
 4 Offer

### 18.3

- 1 I know he will win the competition.  
 2 I will definitely wear a warm coat if it's cold.  
 3 The new office will certainly be an improvement.

## 19

### 19.1

- 1 Present  
 2 Future  
 3 Present  
 4 Future  
 5 Future  
 6 Present  
 7 Future  
 8 Future  
 9 Present

### 19.2

- 1 The exam **is** next week. I'm nervous!  
 2 The bus to London usually **departs** at 5pm.  
 3 Phil **is taking** his children to the library tomorrow.  
 4 Lech won't be at work tomorrow. He **is traveling** to Berlin.  
 5 I can't come to the meeting tomorrow; I **have** a doctor's appointment.  
 6 Mel and Phil **are getting** married this weekend.

## 19.3

- 1 We **are going to** a party later if you want to join us.  
 2 The train from Glasgow **arrives** at 10:15pm.  
 3 I **am going** fishing with my father this afternoon.  
 4 Terry **is working** all next weekend to earn a bit of extra money.

## 20

### 20.1

- 1 Will you be coming into college later? I **need some help with my project**.  
 2 In the year 3000, I think **people will be living on the moon**.  
 3 I can give you a lift. I'll **be driving past the library anyway**.  
 4 Will we be having a meeting **about the new company logo?**  
 5 I'm sure people won't be driving **flying cars in 20 years' time**.  
 6 Mia is going to be bringing her **new boyfriend to the party tonight**.  
 7 I'm working as a waiter now, but I hope **I'll be running my own restaurant in 10 years**.  
 8 Will you be playing soccer **with us this weekend?**  
 9 Enzo's studying French. He hopes **he'll be working as a translator in a few years**.  
 10 I can post your letter. I'll **be going to the post office this afternoon anyway**.  
 11 In 10 years' time, I hope **I'll be living in a nice house in the country**.  
 12 Tomorrow evening, Femi's band **are going to be performing at Funky Joe's**.  
 13 I guess Liz won't be coming to work **today. She looked terrible yesterday**.  
 14 Marco hopes that he'll be working **as an actor in a few years' time**.  
 15 Sophie will be traveling to Paris next **Thursday to see her mother**.

### 20.2

- 1 Request  
 2 Neutral question  
 3 Neutral question  
 4 Neutral question  
 5 Request

### 20.3

- 1 **I'll be living** in a villa by the time I'm 40.  
 2 Marie **is going to be talking** about the sales figures.  
 3 **We'll all be relaxing** on the beach next week!  
 4 Cas **will probably be earning** lots of money before too long.  
 5 Is Martin **going to be playing** any of his new songs?  
 6 I think humans **will be exploring** other planets by 2050.

## 21

## 21.1

- 1 Amelia **will have moved** to Cairo by the end of September.
- 2 By the end of this year, we **will have been living** here for 25 years.
- 3 Will Pedro **have finished** the painting by the time we return?
- 4 The paint **will have dried** by tomorrow morning.
- 5 By four o'clock, we **will have been waiting** here for two hours.
- 6 I'm sure he **will have won** more than 10 medals by the end of the year.
- 7 I think by the end of the year Rio **will have asked** Yukio to marry him.
- 8 By the time she's 22, Suzy **will have finished** college.
- 9 We **will have completed** the project by the end of May.
- 10 Sam **will have graduated** by this time next year.
- 11 Will you **have finished** the assignment by early October?
- 12 How many countries **will you have visited** by the time you're 40?
- 13 By the time I'm 25, I **will have been studying** for six years.
- 14 I **will have left the country** by the time you get here.
- 15 Dan **will have retired** by the time he's 60.
- 16 By this time next week, we'll **have been** married for a year!
- 17 Sam **will have been cooking** all day by the time the dinner's ready.
- 18 By the end of tonight, I'll **have written** this essay.

## 21.2

- 1 Don't worry. I'm sure we'll have put up the tent by sunset.
- 2 Will Dan have made that chair by the time we come back?
- 3 It looks like they won't have finished the building by next month.

## 21.3

- 1 Anika **will have been acting** for 10 years by the end of the year.
- 2 I'm afraid I **won't have painted** the kitchen by the time you return.
- 3 By December, I **will have been** learning the piano for six months.
- 4 The guests **will have eaten** all the food by the time Tom arrives.
- 5 Leroy **will have turned** 18 by the end of next month.
- 6 In a year's time, Katie **will have been living** in Rome for 20 years.

## 22

## 22.1

- 1 I thought Hugo would have been promoted by the end of the year.
- 2 Pari was going to buy a kitten for her daughter.
- 3 Did you think you'd still be working here in 2021?
- 4 I thought Sam would pass the final English exam.
- 5 Penny was going to clean her house if she had time.
- 6 I knew Michelle would become a successful singer one day.
- 7 Becky wasn't going to do the English course, was she?

## 22.2

- 1 Christopher **thought he would go** traveling when **he finished** college.
- 2 Farouk **was going to start** cycling to work in the new year.
- 3 I **was going to cook** dinner when I **got** home from work.
- 4 Pablo **had** the ball. I **thought he was going** to score.
- 5 I **was** sure Danny **would finish** the wall soon.
- 6 I **thought** Ania **would win** the athletics competition.
- 7 My sister **was going** to get a cat when she **moved** house.
- 8 The radio **said it was going to snow** tonight.
- 9 Craig **thought he would visit** Japan in the summer.
- 10 **We were going to see** a new band playing at Club 9000.
- 11 I **was** sure **he was going to talk** about the company's problems.
- 12 Kelly **was** sure she **was going to see** some dolphins on vacation.

## 23

## 23.1

- 1 Are you meeting my sister for dinner this evening?
- 2 They will have finished the stadium by the end of the year.
- 3 By August, I will have been working here for one year.
- 4 It's clear that Petra isn't going to win.
- 5 Derek thought he would study engineering at college.
- 6 Does the lesson begin at half past three?
- 7 In 10 years' time I'll be living in Spain.

## 23.2

- 1 I thought I was going to be late, **but I made it to work just on time.**
- 2 Tomorrow's lecture about volcanoes **will be very interesting.**
- 3 Tim thought the meeting **would have started** by now.
- 4 Sorry, I'm busy at the moment, but **I will have finished in 10 minutes.**

## 23.3

- 1 Sue tells me she **is going** to start learning Spanish next year.
- 2 You look tired. **I'll** get you some coffee.
- 3 Look at those clouds. **It's going to** rain soon.
- 4 **I'll** help you with those bags, Edith.
- 5 Look! **He is going to** ask his girlfriend to marry him.
- 6 **I am going to** see a play at the theater. I've already got the tickets.
- 7 In the future, I think people **will** travel to other planets.
- 8 **I'll** have the chocolate cake on the right, please.

## 23.4

- 1 The forecast said it was going to rain later.
- 2 If you're not careful, you'll smash a window.
- 3 I hope Silvia's going to sing all her hits tonight.

## 23.5

- 1 Our company **is not going to** make a profit this year.
- 2 I don't think my son **will be** an artist when he grows up.
- 3 I can't meet you tomorrow. **I'm playing** tennis with Antoine.
- 4 **We're going to miss** the beginning of the play. Let's hurry!
- 5 Sal **will have been working** at the diner for 10 years in August.
- 6 I **was going to eat** another piece of cake, but I remembered I was on a diet.

## 23.6

- 1 My son thinks we will be driving flying cars in the future.
- 2 Seb won't have finished the decorating by the time you get back.
- 3 Look! That child's going to fall off that wall.
- 4 It's Angie's party tonight. I'll bring some snacks and cakes.
- 5 The train had broken down, so I knew I was going to be late.
- 6 I'm going to buy that house I saw a couple of times last week.
- 7 Suki is joining us for dinner at the Hotel Bristol.
- 8 When I turn 40, I will have been living in Lisbon for 20 years.
- 9 I am traveling to Paris by train this afternoon.
- 10 I know! I'll buy my grandmother a new scarf.
- 11 John knew there were going to be bad delays on the trains.
- 12 Do you think you'll have finished the essay by the time I arrive?
- 13 This time next year, I hope I'll be studying medicine at college.



24

## 24.1

- 1 The alarm **is tested** once a month at my workplace.
- 2 The sculpture **is displayed** in the main hall.
- 3 The Eiffel Tower **is visited** by millions of tourists each year.
- 4 Lunch **is eaten** in the college cafeteria.
- 5 The band **is expected** to perform its greatest hits.

## 24.2

- 1 This program is used by many students.
- 2 Her new dress is being made by a famous designer.
- 3 Our apartment is cleaned every Thursday.
- 4 The train is usually driven by Martin.

## 24.3

- 1 The game is usually played in Central Park each September.
- 2 The play is being performed on stage later tonight.
- 3 Solar panels are being used by an increasing number of people.

## 24.4

- 1 English **is not understood** by many people here.
- 2 A new shopping mall **is being built** near the park.
- 3 Some shows **are watched** by millions of people each day.
- 4 The food **is being prepared** at home today.
- 5 The castle **is surrounded** by dense forests.
- 6 Our products **are** usually **dispatched** within two days.
- 7 Latin **is not studied** by many young people.
- 8 Guests **are** always **provided** with a complimentary lunch.
- 9 My computer **is being repaired** at the moment.
- 10 Kelvin **is being taught** how to juggle today.
- 11 The children **are** always **supervised** by two adults.
- 12 A lot of old factories **are being knocked down**.
- 13 The crime **is being investigated** by the police.
- 14 Students **are expected** to be punctual at all times.
- 15 I'm staying with Claire while my house **is being decorated**.
- 16 The play **is being performed** in French tonight.
- 17 That course **is** usually **taught** by Eduardo.
- 18 All our plastic and glass **is recycled** by the council.
- 19 Ron **is being investigated** for fraud.
- 20 My hair **is cut** by a stylist from Ecuador.
- 21 The car **is being washed** right now.
- 22 Karim's performance **is being recorded** tonight.

25

## 25.1

- 1 The temple in my town was built in 1482.
- 2 We couldn't use the kitchen because it was being painted.

- 3 Patrick was surrounded by all the books he had to read.
- 4 The roof was repaired by my father.
- 5 I was taught how to drive by my aunt.
- 6 John's birthday cake was made by his grandmother.
- 7 Our cat was being looked after by a friend.

## 25.2

- 1 When we got home, **we discovered the house had been broken into**.
- 2 Karen was so upset **because she hadn't been invited to the party**.
- 3 I hadn't been told it was Rajiv's birthday, **so I didn't have a present for him**.
- 4 Many houses have been damaged **by the recent hurricane**.
- 5 Have all the staff been informed **about tomorrow's meeting?**
- 6 Has your car been fixed yet? **It's been in the auto repair shop for ages!**

## 25.3

- 1 The play **was interrupted** by the smoke alarm. We had to evacuate the theater.
- 2 Dan's room was filthy. It **hadn't been cleaned** in weeks.
- 3 That old factory near my house **has been demolished**.
- 4 All of the plants on the balcony **have been watered**.
- 5 The mail **hasn't been delivered** yet. I'm still waiting.
- 6 Most of the forest **was cut down** last year.
- 7 The spy **was being followed** by two men in hats.
- 8 Malcolm **has been fired**. He was so lazy!

## 25.4

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1 All of the cake that Jemima had made was eaten.
- 2 All the money from the bank's safe was stolen.
- 3 My brother was injured in a car accident yesterday.
- 4 All the tables in the restaurant have been booked.
- 5 Lots of tower blocks were being built in the suburbs.
- 6 That part of the country hadn't been explored before.
- 7 They were so happy that their cat had been found.
- 8 I wasn't informed that the office was closed on Friday.
- 9 All the tickets for tonight's movie have been sold.
- 10 That mountain has never been climbed before.
- 11 A lot of buildings have been destroyed by the earthquake.
- 12 It's cold. The window has been left open.

26

## 26.1

- 1 The new stadium **will be opened** by the president.
- 2 All the food **will be cooked** by our new chef, Luigi.
- 3 Our house **won't be finished** by the end of the year.
- 4 The prisoner **will be released** after 30 years.
- 5 **Will** the show **be presented** by a new DJ?
- 6 My latest novel **will be published** in January.
- 7 The water **will be turned off** on Thursday morning.
- 8 The lecture **will be given** by Professor O'Brien.
- 9 Dinner **will be served** in the dining room between 7 and 9pm.
- 10 All the laundry **will be done** by the time you get back.
- 11 **Will** the students **be given** a test at the end of the course?

## 26.2

- 1 I hope my house will have been sold by next month.
- 2 I'm sure we'll have been visited by aliens by 2100.
- 3 Will the dress have been altered before her wedding day?

## 26.3

- 1 By 2030, intelligent robots **will have been developed**.
- 2 I'm sure our car **will have been repaired** by the beginning of next week.
- 3 The computer **will have been replaced** before you start work.
- 4 I think Jane **will have been fired** by this time next year.
- 5 By 2050, many more galaxies **will have been discovered**.
- 6 Do you think the criminals **will have been caught** by then?
- 7 All our staff **will have been trained** by the end of the week.
- 8 **Will** the project **have been completed** by the time we return?
- 9 All the issues **will have been resolved** before we release the product.
- 10 I hope the kitchen **will have been painted** by the time we move in.
- 11 Our new bed **will have been delivered** by the end of the month.
- 12 The decision **will have been made** by Friday evening.



## 27

## 27.1

- 1 All computers should be turned off before leaving the office.
- 2 Protective glasses must be worn at all times.
- 3 We should have been told about the exam.
- 4 Can the meeting be postponed until later in the week?
- 5 All the tourists should be given a guidebook.
- 6 You could have been killed running across that street!
- 7 Our car should have been repaired weeks ago.

## 27.2

- 1 All the floors must be mopped at the end of the day.
- 2 That ugly building should have been demolished years ago.
- 3 The mountain can be climbed with the help of ropes.
- 4 Our forests must be protected from destruction.
- 5 You wouldn't have been stung if you'd remained calm.

## 27.3

- 1 Bicycles should only be ridden **if you are wearing a helmet**.
- 2 The dentist told me that **one of my teeth must be removed**.
- 3 Clara should have been given **more time to finish her assignment**.
- 4 Everyone should be warned that **a tiger has escaped from the zoo**.
- 5 The dish could have been improved **if we'd used better ingredients**.
- 6 The steak should be fried **for one minute on each side**.
- 7 The accident might have been avoided **if the car hadn't been going so fast**.

## 28

## 28.1

- 1 It has been revealed that the company is losing a lot of money.
- 2 That old house across the road is said to be haunted.
- 3 The movie star is rumored to be in a relationship with her co-star.
- 4 The new gallery is reported to contain a lot of modern art.
- 5 The mountain is known to be dangerous to climb.
- 6 It has been reported that many houses have been destroyed.
- 7 There are said to be many beautiful temples in Japan.

## 28.2

- 1 I'm hoping that I will **get promoted** to senior manager soon.
- 2 My colleague often **gets criticized** for the quality of her work.
- 3 The bedroom's **getting redecorated** next week.
- 4 My aunt's car **got stolen** from the parking lot at work.
- 5 Samantha **got bitten** by a dog in the local park.

## 28.3

- 1 This store **is known** to sell high-quality shoes.
- 2 It **has been reported** that Ella is going to start performing again.
- 3 The grass **gets cut** once a month by our gardener.
- 4 It **is rumored** that we are going to have an exam today.
- 5 All the dishes **got washed** by Danny.

## 29

## 29.1

- 1 Food tastes awful when you add too much salt.
- 2 If my dog gets hungry, he barks loudly.
- 3 If you misbehave, you get sent to detention.

## 29.2

- 1 When it gets too cold, **we light the fire**.
- 2 If you squeeze a balloon hard enough, **it explodes**.
- 3 Water boils if you **heat it long enough**.
- 4 Eggs usually break when **you drop them**.
- 5 If you keep cooling water, **it eventually freezes**.
- 6 If you don't pay your bills on time, **you get fined**.

## 29.3

- 1 If the phone rings, please **answer** it.
- 2 **Let me know** if you have any problems at all.
- 3 **Don't eat** it if you don't like it.
- 4 When you buy something expensive, always **keep** the receipt.
- 5 If it's sunny tomorrow, **make sure** to use sunscreen.

## 29.4

- 1 If it **stops** raining, I'll finish painting the fence.
- 2 If Janine works very hard, she **will pass** her exams.
- 3 If I **don't get** the job, I'll be very upset.
- 4 Sally **will lose** her job if she keeps missing deadlines.
- 5 If it doesn't rain tomorrow, **we will have** a picnic.
- 6 If I **get** a raise, I'll definitely go on an expensive vacation.
- 7 Sarah will go fishing on Saturday if she **has** time.
- 8 If we take this path, **we will get** there more quickly.

## 29.5

- 1 Phil would buy a new television if he had more money.
- 2 If I didn't have a headache, I'd definitely come to the party.
- 3 I'd visit you more often if I had more time.
- 4 If I was young again, I would go traveling around the world.

## 29.6

- 1 Tony would buy a villa if he won the lottery.
- 2 If we had more money, we would start our own business.
- 3 I'm sure David would help you if you asked him.
- 4 If Ania went traveling, she'd go to Vietnam.

## 29.7

- 1 If Fleur **had gone** to bed earlier, she **wouldn't have felt** tired all day.
- 2 Simon **would have gone** to jail if the police **had caught** him.
- 3 If Marco **had known** there was a test, he **would have studied** for it.
- 4 I **would have brought** an umbrella if I **had known** it was going to rain.
- 5 If Chris **hadn't scored**, we **wouldn't have won** the championship.
- 6 If I **had known** you were coming, I **would have cleaned** the apartment.
- 7 I **would have bought** you a present if I **had known** it was your birthday.
- 8 Dom **wouldn't have been** alone on his birthday if he **had invited** his friends.
- 9 If I **hadn't slept** through my alarm, I **wouldn't have arrived** late for work.
- 10 Abbie **would have studied** art if she **had gone** to college.
- 11 If we **had arrived** early, we **wouldn't have missed** the train.
- 12 Libby **would have won** the race if she **had been** faster than Nina.
- 13 We **would have gone** camping if **we'd known** it was going to be so hot.
- 14 If Lou **hadn't worked** so hard, the project **wouldn't have been** such a success.

## 29.8

- 1 If I hadn't brought the umbrella I'd be **very wet now**.
- 2 If Ed had scored higher on his tests, **he'd be going to a good college now**.
- 3 I'd be at work now **if I hadn't missed the 7am train**.
- 4 Chloe wouldn't be sitting outside now **if she'd remembered her key this morning**.
- 5 Gordon wouldn't be in prison **if he hadn't stolen the painting from the gallery**.

## 29.9

- 1 Jemma **wouldn't be** so tired now if she'd gone to bed earlier.
- 2 If they **had finished** the decorating, we wouldn't be sleeping in a camper.
- 3 If Emma **had listened** to our advice, she would be more successful now.
- 4 I wouldn't be such a good athlete if I **hadn't trained** so hard.
- 5 If Len had fixed my car, I **wouldn't be walking** to work today.
- 6 Tim **would love** it here if he had decided to join us.
- 7 Karen wouldn't have to stand if she **had reserved** a seat.
- 8 If I hadn't lost my job, I **wouldn't be living** with my sister.
- 9 If you **had kept** practicing, I'm sure you'd be a famous singer today.

## 29.10

- 1 If I **had to** make a choice, I would say I prefer dogs.
- 2 I **would have graduated** by now if I'd continued with my studies.
- 3 If you **don't hurry up**, you're going to be late for school.
- 4 You would have had a great time at the party if you **had come**.
- 5 We'd be on vacation now if we **hadn't missed** the flight.
- 6 When water **gets** hot enough, it boils.
- 7 I **will go** to the doctor if my leg still hurts tomorrow.
- 8 The soup **would taste** better if I had added more salt.
- 9 I always drink plenty of water if I **get** too hot.
- 10 It **would have been** a perfect party if the dog hadn't eaten the cake.
- 11 I **will repair** the roof this afternoon if the weather's good.
- 12 I **would be** very scared if I ever saw a UFO.

## 30

## 30.1

- 1 You **can have** an ice cream if you're really good.
- 2 If you'd asked her to marry you, she **might have said** yes.
- 3 We **could go** camping if I take a few days off work.
- 4 If she had practiced more, Helena **could have been** a great singer.
- 5 If I have some free time later, I **might do** some gardening.

## 30.2

- 1 Unless you get up now, **you're going to be late**.
- 2 She'll leave the firm **unless we start paying her more**.
- 3 Unless you turn the music down, **the neighbors will complain**.
- 4 You'll get sunburned **unless you wear sun protection**.
- 5 Unless you start working harder, **you're not going to graduate on time**.
- 6 Angelica will get annoyed **unless you reply to her email**.
- 7 Unless there's bad weather, **we'll reach the summit before noon**.

## 30.3

- 1 Had business been better, the company wouldn't have gone bankrupt.
- 2 Had Pamela been richer, she would have bought a larger house.
- 3 Had you studied harder, the exam wouldn't have been so difficult.
- 4 Had Paul attended the meeting, he would have known about the new project.
- 5 Had the weather been better, their trip would have been more enjoyable.

## 31

## 31.1

- 1 Second
- 2 First
- 3 Zero
- 4 Third
- 5 First
- 6 First
- 7 Zero
- 8 Second
- 9 Third
- 10 Second

## 31.2

- 1 If I had more money, I'd go on vacation to Rome.
- 2 We would have packed warmer clothes if we'd known it was so cold here.
- 3 They could play baseball if it stopped raining.
- 4 If you keep practicing, you will win the championship.

## 31.3

- 1 I would have passed the test if I'd studied.
- 2 If Mia had more time, she'd start a hobby.
- 3 If it's sunny tomorrow, I'll go swimming.
- 4 If you heat ice, it turns into water.
- 5 I'd have caught the bus if I hadn't overslept.
- 6 If my team doesn't win, I'll be disappointed.
- 7 If Mel won the lottery, she'd buy a villa.
- 8 If I had seen Rob, I would have said hello.
- 9 If I'm late again, my boss will be so angry.
- 10 If she had asked me, I would have helped her.
- 11 If you went to bed earlier, you'd feel less tired.

## 32

## 32.1

- 1 Likely
- 2 Didn't happen
- 3 Didn't happen
- 4 Unlikely
- 5 Didn't happen
- 6 Unlikely
- 7 Unlikely
- 8 Likely
- 9 Likely
- 10 Unlikely

## 32.2

- 1 What if Vicky became a famous actress? **She really enjoys drama, after all.**
- 2 Suppose you lost your job at the cafe. **Where do you think you'd work?**
- 3 Suppose we get lost in the forest. **We may not be able to find the path.**
- 4 Let's prepare some more food **in case more people arrive.**
- 5 Take some water with you **in case you get hot while you're jogging.**
- 6 I'm nervous about going on stage tonight. **What if the audience don't like me?**

## 32.3

- 1 Check the gallery's website in case it is closed on Mondays.
- 2 Suppose the factory closed. What would the town do?
- 3 What if we come across a bear? There are lots of them in the mountains.
- 4 It's your interview tomorrow. Set an alarm in case you don't wake up.
- 5 What if we won the lottery? What would we do with the money?
- 6 Take a good book in case you get bored waiting.

## 33

## 33.1

- 1 I wish I had a job where I could work outside.
- 2 Simone wishes she'd remembered to bring her camera.
- 3 Martin wishes he knew how to ski.
- 4 Pete wishes he had a better car.
- 5 Ronaldo wishes he hadn't broken his guitar.
- 6 Joan wishes she had a lawn mower.
- 7 We wish it was sunny, so we could go to the beach.

## 33.2

- 1 Can no longer happen
- 2 Can no longer happen
- 3 Could still happen
- 4 Can no longer happen
- 5 Could still happen

## 33.3

- 1 I wish I **didn't work** so late all the time. I'm so tired in the evenings.
- 2 We're lost! **We should have planned** our route a little better.
- 3 Ed, I wish **you would** stop singing out of tune all the time.
- 4 If only I **could** cook! Everything I make is a disaster.

## 34

## 34.1

- 1 Are the children waiting?
- 2 Is there a good restaurant on Park Street?
- 3 Can Fu speak fluent French?
- 4 Is Jean going to win the game?
- 5 Should Peter tell Amy about the party?
- 6 Has Kelly bought a gift for her dad?

## 34.2

- 1 Did Anthony start his new job at the bank?
- 2 Does Wayne want to come to the zoo with us?
- 3 Did Harleen work for us a few years ago?
- 4 Does Henry like classical music?
- 5 Do Lara and Michael go to the same school?
- 6 Do they own the bookstore by the park?



## 34.3

- Does Tina still work at the boutique?
- Do you prefer cats or dogs?
- Did the children enjoy the fair?
- Did you manage to move that box?
- Does Selma go jogging often?
- Did you help clean up after the party?
- Do you often go abroad on vacation?
- Doesn't Clara have two large dogs?
- Have you ever read *Little Women*?
- Don't you like fast food, Phillippe?
- Have you ever had a driving lesson?
- Did you enjoy the art exhibition?
- Did you remember to feed the dog?

## 34.4

- Does Dora work in a bank?
- Are your colleagues coming to the party?
- Do we start work at 10am on Fridays?
- Does Marlon really live in a mansion?
- Did Bill **work** for the government?
- Were there many animals in the forest?
- Does Marcel come from Argentina?
- Did you **go** to the theater last night?
- Have you seen Anika's new car?
- Is Tom going to finish the report today?
- Did Bruce **live** in Glasgow?
- Was John at the airport to meet you?
- Do you take a shower in the evening?
- Is there any juice left?
- Have we got enough time left?
- Is your brother coming later?
- Do Claire and Sam have any children?
- Does Tim play soccer on the weekend?
- Are those your tools on the table?
- Did Elsa **have** a boyfriend named Gus?
- Does Ash still work at the café?
- Is your daughter still in college?
- Has Sheila seen your new house yet?

## 34.5

- Has she finished the painting yet?
- Have you been to India?
- Are you coming to the party later?
- Is Jackie still a teacher?
- Did you remember to lock the door?

## 34.6

- Has Ed lived in New York for more than 10 years?
- Are Katia and Pavel getting married in June?
- Did Claudia take a flight to Rio de Janeiro?
- Does Mia go swimming every evening after work?
- Did you remember to buy some water?
- Are Ron and Lily playing tennis this afternoon?

## 35

## 35.1

- What did you buy at the market?
- Why is Lena laughing so much?
- Which of these bags is yours?
- How does your dad feel today?
- Who is going to teach the course?
- Whose car is parked outside?
- How quickly can you finish it?

- Where does your cousin live?
- When does the hardware store close?
- Whose diary is on the desk?
- When did you last see Maria?
- How many times has he been to Kenya?
- Why did she quit the course?
- Where is the entrance?
- Who did you invite to the party?
- How long does it take to get there?
- Which car should I buy?
- Where did I put my glasses?

## 35.2

- Where is the classroom?
- Whose phone is this?
- Why did you do that?
- How long did you wait?
- Who did you meet earlier?
- Which house is yours?
- When does the movie start?

## 35.3

- When did you start playing the guitar, Tom?
- How does the soup taste, Gustav?
- Which way do you think we should go?

## 35.4

- What is the date today?
- What's the name of your business?
- Which train are you taking, the 1pm or the 3pm?
- Which do you prefer, skiing or snowboarding?
- What time are they arriving?
- If you had to choose between dogs and cats, which would you choose?

## 35.5

- How often do you read?
- When can we have our meeting?
- When is the movie being released?
- How often do you perform in public?
- When do you finish work?

## 35.6

- How many people work in your department?
- Where are they going to build the new airport?
- Whose coat has been left on the back of that chair?
- Which way is it to the bus station?
- What time does the concert start?
- When does the train to Glasgow leave?

## 36

## 36.1

- What would you do if you saw a ghost?
- When do you think you will finish building the house?
- How do you feel after the race?
- How often do you water your plants?
- Why do you both look so happy?

## 36.2

- What time does the train leave?
- What is your name?
- How was the movie?

- When did you get this dog?
- Why did you phone me earlier?
- Who can speak English here?
- Who should I call to complain?
- When do you start work?
- What is this button for?
- Which dress do you prefer?
- Why aren't you at work today?
- What do you eat for breakfast?
- Where does David live?

## 36.3

- What is she going to sing for us next?
- Where did you buy that lovely dress?
- What happened to your leg, Paul?
- Whose bicycle is that in the yard?
- Why do you have to watch so much TV?
- How do you feel about losing your job?
- Where do you cycle to on Sundays?
- How many times have you visited New York?
- Why are you so angry, Anthony?
- How old are the twins today?
- What time do you eat your lunch?
- When did you last go camping, Sam?

## 37

## 37.1

- I went with an old friend from school.
- An artist from Australia painted it.
- It was a present from my boyfriend.
- We saw a play by William Shakespeare.
- I'm going to have fish and chips.
- Angelica. She has so much experience.
- There was a terrible storm last week.

## 37.2

- Subject question
- Subject question
- Object question
- Subject question
- Subject question
- Object question
- Object question

## 37.3

- Who played golf with you yesterday?
- What did you see at the movies last night?
- Who married Sonia at the end of the movie?
- What did you catch while fishing yesterday?

## 37.4

- Who did I see you playing golf with on Sunday?
- Who stole the money from the bank?
- Who left this terrible mess?
- What are you going to wear to the wedding?
- Who lives in that huge castle?
- What did you give the cat to eat?
- Who won the race this afternoon?



38

## 38.1

- Do you know **what time the lesson begins**?
- Do you know **where the bus station is**?
- Could you tell me **how to get to the national gallery**?
- Do you know **how much a ticket to Oslo costs**?
- Could you tell me **if breakfast is still being served**?
- Could you tell me **why this is so expensive**?
- Do you know **whether the train goes to Swansea**?

## 38.2

- Could you tell me where Lizzy lives?
- Do you know why the school is closed?
- Do you know if the course has begun yet?
- Could you tell me why you did that?

## 38.3

- Do you know if Emma has brushed the yard?
- Could you tell me whose that old car is?
- Do you know if the car will be ready by 5pm?
- Could you tell me where the station is?
- Do you know when you will finish the report?

39

## 39.1

- Brian was a Spanish teacher, **wasn't he**?
- Mark is Mike's cousin, **isn't he**?
- There aren't any tickets left, **are there**?
- There's a nice café near the park, **isn't there**?
- That was such an exciting movie, **wasn't it**?
- It's not going to rain today, **is it**?

## 39.2

- Your grandmother likes tea, **doesn't she**?
- Gerald has finished the gardening, **hasn't he**?
- Luca didn't pass the English exam, **did he**?
- Carla worked in a bakery, **didn't she**?
- We should buy a new fridge, **shouldn't we**?
- You haven't seen my glasses, **have you**?
- Mike can swim, **can't he**?

## 39.3

- The hat on the left is gorgeous, **isn't it**?
- That ride was really scary, **wasn't it**?
- You're Daniel's cousin, **aren't you**?
- I think our team's going to win, **isn't it**?
- We aren't going to catch our plane, **are we**?
- You've read that book before, **haven't you**?
- The guests don't look very happy, **do they**?
- Bill plays the guitar really well, **doesn't he**?
- Chloe will do the shopping for you, **won't she**?
- I should have brought an umbrella, **shouldn't I**?
- Martin doesn't like cooking much, **does he**?
- Paul looks absolutely exhausted, **doesn't he**?
- We've been waiting here for 30 minutes, **haven't we**?
- You're not listening to anything I say, **are you**?

40

## 40.1

- Does he?
- Did you?
- Isn't it?
- Have you?
- Did she?
- Is she?
- Hasn't he?
- Was it?
- Is he?

41

## 41.1

- Yes, there is.
- No, I don't.
- No, we won't.
- Yes, I do.
- Yes, we are.
- Yes, there were.
- Yes, he can.
- No, I haven't.
- No, I wouldn't.

42

## 42.1

- Is Joe playing tennis on Thursday?
- Have they knocked down the apartment block?
- Is Jean-Paul learning to cook?
- Is Rob going to win the race?
- Does Chrissy do exercises each morning?
- Will they play all their greatest hits?
- Did Claire and Ben get married last week?
- Does Aziz work late every evening?
- Did Jessica take the dog for a walk?

## 42.2

SUBJECT QUESTIONS:

**Who wrote this book?****What happened next?****Who called earlier?****Who drove you to work?**

OBJECT QUESTIONS:

**Who did you invite?****What did you buy?****Who do you live with?****What does John do for work?**

## 42.3

- Open question
- Closed question
- Closed question
- Open question
- Closed question
- Closed question

43

## 43.1

- Emilia said she wanted to come to the park with us.
- She said her husband was from Alabama.
- He said it was extremely hot in Adelaide.
- She told me that she was a lawyer.
- My son said he wanted to quit school.
- Our boss told us we had to work harder.
- They told me they owned a villa in Spain.

## 43.2

- She told me she was a Canadian citizen.
- Rob said he had won a huge amount of money.
- Ella said that Phil's 18th birthday party was great fun.
- Ted told me he went backpacking around Europe last year.

## 43.3

- She **said** that she **traveled** around the world a lot for work.
- She **told** me that her new boyfriend **was** from Ethiopia.
- Silvio **told** Maria that he **lived** in Milan with his family.
- Mike **said** that he **felt** sick, so he went home.
- She **told** me that her brother **worked** in a travel agency.

44

## 44.1

- Jan said she would give me a call later that evening.
- Benedict said he was seeing his grandma later that day.
- George told me he'd arrived at the hotel hours earlier.
- Matt and Mable said they were going to the movies to see a thriller.
- Danny said he couldn't afford to come on vacation with us this summer.
- Gemma told me that my new dress looked great.
- Katie said she'd give the camera back to me the next day.

## 44.2

- Archie told me that his car had broken down.
- Betty said she'd seen a wolf in the woods last year.
- Malcolm told Mel that he works in a salon.

## 44.3

- Cath told me she **had** posted the letter a few days ago.
- The weather forecast said it **was** going to be sunny yesterday.
- Angela told me she **had** already mowed the lawn.
- Miles told us that the company **was** losing money before it went bankrupt.

① In February, Lisa told me that she **had had** a great idea for a vacation.

② Emil said he **would** visit me in Japan that summer.

#### 44.4

① Harry told me they were going to the zoo on Thursday.

② The shop assistant told me they didn't have a shirt in my size.

③ Michelle said she didn't want to go to the party last night.

④ The manager said the hotel was fully booked in July.

⑤ Jenny told me that she'd worked on a farm when she was a student.

⑥ Billy's mom said he would pass all his exams.

⑦ Robert told me he was writing a novel set in Ancient Rome.

⑧ She said that she lives in a house near the bus station.

⑨ Carlo said he was going to buy a new car that afternoon.

## 45

#### 45.1

① Don **reminded me to buy** some milk on the way home.

② My parents **encouraged me to study** medicine in college.

③ Tina's sister **explained that she would be** late to the recital.

#### 45.2

① Wayne admitted that it was the first time he'd made pancakes.

② Archie's boss threatened to fire him if he didn't work harder.

③ Sergio asked me to marry him while we were on vacation.

## 46

#### 46.1

① Pedro explained that he **didn't work on Fridays**.

② Paul's mom told him **not to draw on the walls**.

③ Monika reminded me **not to forget my passport**.

④ I said that I didn't want **to drive to the restaurant**.

⑤ I told my brother I couldn't **come because I was feeling ill**.

#### 46.2

① My colleague mentioned that the printer wasn't working.

② Mark explained that he didn't like dogs.

③ Myra phoned to say that she wasn't coming to the meeting.

④ Jon tried to persuade me not to eat any more cake.

## 47

#### 47.1

① The artist asked us what we thought of his painting.

② Georges asked me if I'd ever been to Paris.

③ Dave asked if I'd like to go fishing with him.

④ Jon asked me why I was dressed as a clown.

⑤ Mom asked if I'd done the dishes yet.

⑥ My stylist asked me what I wanted.

⑦ The waiter asked me what I wanted to drink.

#### 47.2

MODEL ANSWERS

① He asked me **where you live**.

② Sue asked me **what I think**.

③ Amy asked us **if she should bring something**.

④ Paul asked **why I left**.

⑤ They asked me **where I had been**.

⑥ The girl asked me **where the station is**.

⑦ She asked **where the exit was**.

⑧ Mia asked me **if I own a car**.

⑨ They asked me **who he is**.

#### 47.3

① Peter asked **if you were coming to the performance later**.

② My teacher asked **me if I'd decided to study math at college**.

③ Lou asked **me where I wanted to go on Saturday**.

④ The waiter asked **if we wanted to order more drinks**.

⑤ Susan asked **me what time we usually have our lunch break**.

⑥ She asked **me if I wanted to go to the movies with her**.

⑦ Claire asked **her kids if they wanted mint or strawberry ice cream**.

⑧ Fran asked **how long we had lived in San Francisco**.

⑨ Pete asked **whether I could help him move house this weekend**.

#### 47.4

① Paul asked if he **could** borrow my T-shirt.

② Danny wanted to know if it **is raining / was raining** here.

③ Hiroshi asked whether you **are coming** to the lecture later today.

④ Shona asked me if I **would post** this letter for her.

⑤ My granddaughter asked me how long **have been knitting / I had been knitting** for.

⑥ Antonia asked me where you **are living** at the moment.

⑦ Greg asked me who the singer **is / was** in the band we saw last night.

⑧ I asked the architect if he knew when they **are going to finish / were going to finish** the block.

⑨ Ella asked me who **won / had won** the marathon yesterday.

⑩ My children asked me today if I **believe / believed** in ghosts.

⑪ Patsy wanted to know who **directed / had directed** the new comedy.

## 48

#### 48.1

① Steph told me that she really missed her friends and family.

② Les told me Christine had paid for lunch the previous week.

③ Rohan tells me he really doesn't want to work this Saturday.

④ Mia told Dan that her daughter dreamed of becoming an actor.

⑤ Jiya once told me she'd be a famous singer by 2015.

⑥ Lou told me they were going to the theater the following day.

⑦ Angela tells me she's never been to the Tower of London.

#### 48.2

① Ruth explained why the results were so bad.

② Phil said he'd finish the garden last Wednesday.

③ Carla asked whether she could leave the office early.

④ Liam told me he had visited Paris the previous year.

⑤ Ken asked Katie if she wanted to dance with him.

#### 48.3

① Karen told me she was going to Vietnam for her honeymoon.

② Mike said he wanted to be a police officer when he was a kid.

③ Sophia mentioned that she has a spare ticket.

## 49

#### 49.1

① Main

② Auxiliary

③ Auxiliary

④ Auxiliary

⑤ Main

⑥ Main

⑦ Auxiliary

⑧ Main

⑨ Auxiliary

⑩ Main

#### 49.2

① You **should** call your grandma. It's her birthday.

② The students **have** all handed in their papers.

③ Sandra **isn't** coming to the party tonight.

④ My son **could** already swim when he was three.

⑤ I **had** already left by the time Jim arrived.

⑥ I **didn't** like her boyfriend. He was rude.

⑦ You **mustn't** speak so loudly in the library.



## 49.3

TRANSITIVE:

**want, bring, throw**

INTRANSITIVE:

**arrive, come, smile**

## 50

## 50.1

- 1 Action
- 2 State
- 3 Action
- 4 Action
- 5 State
- 6 State
- 7 Action

## 50.2

- 1 We **know** Jenny very well.
- 2 This soup **tastes** awful.
- 3 Chris **wants** an ice cream.
- 4 Our vacation **cost** a lot of money.
- 5 Craig **understands** Spanish.
- 6 I **recognized** that man.
- 7 My son **hates** vegetables.
- 8 Dom's pie **smelled** great.
- 9 Your book **sounds** interesting.

## 50.3

ACTION VERBS:

**try, read, eat, kick, drive**

STATE VERBS:

**be, contain, know, hear, own**

## 50.4

- 1 Fatima **is writing** a book about her childhood.
- 2 It **is raining** outside. Let's watch something on TV.
- 3 Marco **is playing** guitar on stage now.
- 4 Rosita **has** two sisters, who live in the United States.
- 5 Claude **hates** all salad and vegetables.
- 6 I **am reading** a travel guide to Los Angeles.

## 51

## 51.1

- 1 **plan** planning **planned**
- 2 play **playing** **played**
- 3 **do** doing **done**
- 4 **like** liking **liked**
- 5 **find** finding **found**
- 6 **write** writing **written**
- 7 finish **finishing** **finished**
- 8 **buy** buying **bought**
- 9 read **reading** **read**
- 10 **tell** telling **told**
- 11 **hope** hoping **hoped**
- 12 swim **swimming** **swam**
- 13 **go** going **went**

- 1 **cry** crying **cried**
- 2 **begin** beginning **begun**
- 3 **say** saying **said**
- 4 **love** loving **loved**

## 51.2

- 1 Carla has **finished** all of her assignments.
- 2 Marsha's **planning** a surprise party for Ed.
- 3 Marion **is going** to get married this fall.
- 4 We hadn't **planned** to stay in, but it started raining.
- 5 We want **to go** to the art exhibition tomorrow.

## 51.3

- 1 **Writing** new vocabulary in a notebook helps me to remember it.
- 2 Tim's English teacher asked if he'd **done** his homework.
- 3 My husband keeps **forgetting** his keys. It's so frustrating.
- 4 My children don't **want to go** to school this morning.
- 5 I go **swimming** most weekends with my friends.
- 6 Everyone had **sung** Happy Birthday by the time I arrived.

## 52

## 52.1

- 1 I finally **managed** to buy a house after saving for years.
- 2 Alberto has **finished** painting the landscape.
- 3 We **arranged** to meet for a drink after work.
- 4 My brother **considered** buying a sports car when he turned 40.
- 5 I really **enjoyed** meeting your friends at the party.

## 52.2

- 1 My dad has decided to start studying Spanish.
- 2 My colleague offered to help me finish the report.
- 3 I really enjoy running on the weekend.

## 52.3

- 1 Carlo enjoys **going** to the theater each Friday.
- 2 Rob and Phil intend **to buy** a house this year.
- 3 Ellie is planning **to visit** Sydney while she's in Australia.
- 4 I don't feel like **playing** football this evening.
- 5 Margo refused **to eat** the ice cream Jed offered her.
- 6 My boss agreed **to let** me go home early from work.

## 52.4

- 1 I wish I hadn't told Jon about my job.
- 2 I was driving home when I decided to stop for a cup of coffee.
- 3 I will remember to pick Angela up later from the airport later.
- 4 Do you remember the time you first met Paul at the conference?
- 5 I used to drink coffee, but I decided to stop a long time ago.

- 6 The professor thanked the organizers and then talked about the experiment.
- 7 You were supposed to meet Paul. Did you remember to do that?
- 8 I'll always remember when I saw Angela for the first time.
- 9 The professor was talking about the experiment and continued to do so.

## 53

## 53.1

- 1 Alfred spends a lot of time playing golf after work.
- 2 Janice watched the kids playing in the park.
- 3 Marco tried to sell his old car to me.
- 4 My boss wants me to work more quickly.
- 5 Helena heard people talking in the room next door.
- 6 My aunt borrowed a lot of money from my dad.
- 7 My mom wants me to clean my room immediately.
- 8 Hanif asked me to help him use the new software.
- 9 Yuri bought an ice cream for his girlfriend.
- 10 Tom reminded Peter to buy some tickets for the concert.

## 53.2

- 1 My parents expect me to keep my room clean.
- 2 Gus's boss allows him to finish early on Fridays.
- 3 Danny watched the children playing on the lawn.
- 4 Don reminded me to phone my grandmother.
- 5 The principal told us to walk more slowly.
- 6 I can imagine Katie becoming an actor one day.
- 7 Ravi spent his summer lying on the beach.
- 8 Eleanor wants her dog to be more friendly.
- 9 Mona asked me to buy some milk from the store.

## 54

## 54.1

- 1 Emma is talking **about** quitting her job.
- 2 Ania finally admitted **to** stealing the jewelry.
- 3 My dad tried to prevent me **from** studying art in college.
- 4 Our company believes **in** doing the best possible job.
- 5 Frank apologized **for** forgetting my birthday.
- 6 I want to ask my tutor **about** doing the exam again.
- 7 We congratulated Sandra **on** winning the competition.
- 8 Paul objected **to** Danny eating a burger in the office.
- 9 We decided **against** buying a house in the country.



- 10 We're all looking forward **to** visiting you soon.  
 11 I need to concentrate **on** passing all my exams this spring.  
 12 Peter is worrying **about** his interview tomorrow.  
 13 The council banned people **from** taking dogs onto the beach.  
 14 Chloe accused me **of** stealing her idea for the presentation.  
 15 Leo's parents tried to stop him **from** marrying the girl he loved.

## 55

## 55.1

- 1 It's taken me a long time to get over this cold.  
 2 Tony works out at the local gym each evening.  
 3 My mother takes care of my sons on Fridays.  
 4 We checked into the hotel and went to our room.  
 5 I've heard from Bill. He's got some shocking news.  
 6 I get along very well with my brother.  
 7 I meet up with my friends most weekends.

## 55.2

- 1 Jen and Hugo eat out very often.  
 2 You should try it on before buying it.  
 3 The music was loud so I turned it down.  
 4 I've always looked up to my brother.  
 5 We've run out of milk.  
 6 We checked into the hotel at noon.  
 7 Rob meets up with Nina on Fridays.  
 8 Does Pete always show up on time?  
 9 I was annoyed because he woke me up.  
 10 I'm staying in to watch the game tonight.  
 11 Sharon handed in her essay early.  
 12 The caterpillar turned into a butterfly.  
 13 It's heavy. Please help me pick it up.

## 55.3

- 1 Ramon is **getting over** the flu.  
 2 It was lovely **to hear from you**.  
 3 She told the children **to sit down**.  
 4 Here's your coat. **Put it on please**.  
 5 We need **to check into the hotel**.  
 6 I spotted a coin and **picked it up**.  
 7 Riku **gets up** at 9:30am on Saturdays.  
 8 The baby's crying. **You woke him up**.  
 9 I love cooking so I **don't eat out often**.  
 10 The café has **run out** of coffee.  
 11 Femi **grew up** in New York.  
 12 The airplane **takes off** in one hour.

## 55.4

- 1 I work out in the gym most evenings.  
 2 Camila really looks up to her English teacher.  
 3 Rachel takes after her father.  
 4 It's so hard to keep up with Libby.  
 5 We ran out of food so I made some more.  
 6 I didn't get on with my brother when we were young.  
 7 We got back from our trip to Wales on Thursday.  
 8 I usually get up later on the weekend.  
 9 My dad's car is always breaking down.

## 55.5

SEPARABLE:

**turn on, throw away, fill up, wake up**

INSEPARABLE:

**do without, get through, go over, come across**

## 55.6

- 1 A break on the coast sounds like the ideal **getaway**.  
 2 There has been another **outbreak** of the disease in the city.  
 3 The café was a **rip-off!** We paid \$20 for a bowl of soup.  
 4 After the **downpour**, the sun came out again.  
 5 It's important to make a **backup** of any work you do.  
 6 There have been so many **dropouts** from the course this year.  
 7 All the students were given a **handout** with important information.  
 8 Following her **break-up** with Charlie, Ola was very unhappy.  
 9 We haven't had **snowfall** like this for years. There's snow and ice everywhere.

## 56

## 56.1

- 1 You should learn how to use a computer.  
 2 Could I have another piece of cake?  
 3 You must not run in the corridor.  
 4 My sister can speak four languages fluently.  
 5 Can I give you a hand with your shopping?  
 6 Could you lend me your pen for a moment?  
 7 That letter must be from Ken's college.

## 56.2

- 1 You mustn't be late for work again.  
 2 Can I get you a drink?  
 3 Can I help you with your bag?

## 56.3

- 1 Can I help you clean up?  
 2 Should Phil study math in college?  
 3 Can Graham play the violin?  
 4 Does Peter have to go to the meeting?  
 5 Can she have another chocolate?  
 6 Could Angela drive us to the party?

## 56.4

- 1 Leroy can't repair your oven.  
 2 My grandma couldn't speak Welsh.  
 3 You shouldn't eat more red meat.  
 4 Louisa can't swim well.  
 5 Students don't have to wear uniforms.  
 6 You can't have another piece of cake.

## 57

## 57.1

- 1 Jamie can't lift that box. I'll help him.  
 2 Emma can make beautiful dresses.  
 3 I can't solve this. It's too difficult.  
 4 Chris can repair your car.  
 5 I can't climb that mountain.  
 6 Rita can cook the most amazing dishes.  
 7 Chloe can speak three languages.

## 57.2

- 1 Jonathan can play the guitar.  
 2 We can't open the door.  
 3 Amy can sing really well.  
 4 Lizzie cannot drive a car.  
 5 Femi can climb trees.  
 6 Marion can speak five languages.  
 7 Derek can't move that piano.

## 57.3

- 1 My grandmother could **make wonderful cakes**.  
 2 I couldn't fix your phone. **You need a new one**.  
 3 When I was a child, **I could run much faster**.  
 4 Martha could play the piano **when she was four years old**.  
 5 I couldn't come to the party **because I felt ill**.  
 6 When she was six, **Jen could already speak six languages**.

## 57.4

- 1 I'll be able to speak it fluently by the summer.  
 2 I won't be able to take my flight without it.  
 3 In the future we'll be able to travel to other planets.  
 4 I'm hoping I will be able to fix it soon.

## 58

## 58.1

- 1 Formal  
 2 Informal  
 3 Formal  
 4 Informal  
 5 Formal  
 6 Formal  
 7 Informal

## 58.2

- 1 Request  
 2 Offer  
 3 Request  
 4 Offer  
 5 Request  
 6 Request  
 7 Offer

## 58.3

- 1 Can I take your coat?  
 2 May I take your order?  
 3 Shall I carry it for you?

## 58.4

- 1 **Could I sit** here, please?
- 2 **May I make** an appointment, please?
- 3 **Could I have** a piece of your pizza?
- 4 **Can I get** you something to drink?
- 5 **Can I have** the chicken and a salad, please?
- 6 **Could you tell** me the way to the museum?

## 59

## 59.1

- 1 You should take it out for a walk.
- 2 You should put on some sunscreen.
- 3 You should try talking to a native speaker.
- 4 He should join a club or take up a hobby.
- 5 She should try to relax before bed.
- 6 You could make a little card for her as a gift.
- 7 He should eat less cake and exercise more.
- 8 You should go home and get some sleep.
- 9 You should try to save money regularly.

## 59.2

- 1 It's going to rain. You **had better** take an umbrella.
- 2 The train's been cancelled. We **had better** take a taxi.
- 3 It's icy outside. You **had better not** drive tonight.
- 4 I'm late for the meeting. I **had better** call my boss.

## 59.3

- 1 If I were you I'd try jogging.
- 2 You really must visit the castle.
- 3 You ought to go to the barbershop.
- 4 He should get a cat. They're quite independent.
- 5 You could wear jeans and a shirt.

## 60

## 60.1

- 1 You have to go. It's about the new IT system.
- 2 You must call her right away!
- 3 You won't have to do any when the summer break comes!
- 4 In that case, you don't have to take your medication any longer.
- 5 The council must do something to stop people from littering.
- 6 I have to keep to the speed limit.
- 7 Yes, all our workers must wear a helmet at all times.
- 8 He had to go home because his daughter's unwell.
- 9 You must not lift anything heavy for two weeks.

## 60.2

- 1 I **don't have to** wear a suit for work, but I wear one anyway.
- 2 I'm staying in bed because I **don't have to** go to work today.
- 3 You **must not** stay in the sun too long. You'll get burned.

- 4 You **must not** touch that pan. It's hot.
- 5 You **don't have to** be great at tennis to enjoy it.
- 6 I have a secret, but you **must not** tell anyone else.

## 60.3

- 1 Everyone will have to leave before 5pm.
- 2 You will have to inform your manager.
- 3 Brenda will have to go home early today.
- 4 She will have to pay for the damage.

## 60.4

- 1 The managers had to apologize.
- 2 Greg had to eat all the broccoli.
- 3 Joe had to work very hard today.
- 4 I had to rest all this week.

## 61

## 61.1

- 1 It looks like Sam could win this race.
- 2 Look! Janet must have passed her driving test.
- 3 He can't be the plumber. He's wearing a suit.

## 61.2

- 1 Alina drank all the water. She **must** have been really thirsty.
- 2 I can't read this. I **might** need new glasses.
- 3 Ben **can't** have stolen the vase. He was with me all evening.
- 4 The journey home takes ages. The children **must** be so bored.
- 5 I can't find my wallet. I **must** have dropped it somewhere.

## 61.3

- 1 I can't find my purse. I **might have left it on** the bus.
- 2 I keep sneezing. I think I **might have a** cold.
- 3 Veronika is crying. She **must have failed** her test.
- 4 What's that animal with brown fur? It **could be a bear**.

## 61.4

- 1 That must be so interesting.
- 2 There might be a burglar downstairs.
- 3 It must have cost a lot of money.
- 4 She can't be feeling very happy.
- 5 You can't have followed the recipe properly.

## 62

## 62.1

- 1 It looks like my team **might win** tonight's game!
- 2 I **might take** some driving lessons if I can afford them.
- 3 I think the train **might have been** canceled.
- 4 I can't find my keys. I **might have left** them at work.
- 5 If you don't hurry you **might miss** the deadline!

- 1 I think we **might be** lost. We had better ask someone.
- 2 I **might not finish** the building by the end of the year.

## 62.2

- 1 I might have forgotten to turn off the iron.
- 2 The forecast said it might snow later.
- 3 Karl might not come to the party this evening.
- 4 Jon may have gone away for the weekend.

## 62.3

- 1 I might not be able to come to the movies.
- 2 I might go to the zoo next weekend.
- 3 Sue might be delayed because of the traffic.
- 4 It looks like it might rain later.

## 63

## 63.1

- 1 Russia is a huge country. It took me seven days to cross it by train.
- 2 While hiking in Scotland, I spotted **an** eagle soaring above us.
- 3 Bill took me on **a** date to **the** most expensive bar in town.
- 4 Where can you get **a** good cup of coffee in **the** evening?
- 5 **The** food in Italy was absolutely delicious.
- 6 When I was **a** child, I wanted to be **an** actor.
- 7 **The** first train to Madrid leaves at 4:30 from platform 4.
- 8 It's going to rain this evening. Don't forget to take **an** umbrella.
- 9 Do you live in **a** house or **an** apartment?
- 10 I saw **a** wolf and **a** bear in Canada. **The** bear was catching fish.
- 11 Neil Armstrong was **the** first man to set foot on **the** moon.
- 12 Last week, I went to see **a** show with my cousin.
- 13 My brother used to be **a** chef. He's **an** optician now.
- 14 While I was in Rome, I visited **the** Colosseum.
- 15 **The** cakes in that bakery are the best in town.
- 16 I had **a** cup of coffee and **a** croissant. **The** coffee was cold, though.
- 17 Is there **a** good hotel where I can stay in your town?
- 18 **The** book that I just finished was really interesting.

## 63.2

- 1 **There are some mugs** in the dishwasher.
- 2 I have **some pencils** here.
- 3 **There are some sandwiches** for you.
- 4 Mary has **some beautiful dresses**.
- 5 Hassan caught **some big fish**.
- 6 **There are some cafés** in town.
- 7 **There are some watches** on the counter.
- 8 Marco climbed **some high mountains**.
- 9 **There are some bags** in the kitchen.
- 10 **There are some people** running outside.
- 11 **There are some big hotels** by the shore.
- 12 Ola sang **some beautiful songs**.



## 63.3

- 1 Clara works in **an** office.
- 2 Do you have **any** brothers or sisters?
- 3 There are **some** banks on my street.
- 4 There aren't **any** cookies in the cupboard.
- 5 Is there **a** hospital near here?
- 6 We visited **an** interesting exhibition today.
- 7 Are there **any** good restaurants nearby?
- 8 London is **a** very big city.
- 9 Is there **a** swimming pool in your town?
- 10 There aren't **any** students in the classroom.
- 11 There are **some** nice cafés near my house.
- 12 I tasted **the** best pasta while I was on vacation.

## 63.4

- 1 The president is visiting the **north of the country next week**.
- 2 The rich always complain **that they don't earn enough**.
- 3 The buildings in the **capital are really beautiful**.
- 4 The coffee in this café **is the best in town**.
- 5 I had a great trip, but **the weather was disappointing**.
- 6 The press were waiting **outside the star's apartment**.

## 63.5

- 1 Children start school when they are seven in my country.
- 2 The children wanted to know the way to the school.
- 3 Bears often visit people's yards to look for food.
- 4 Residents were warned that there could be a flood soon.

## 63.6

- 1 My sister-in-law is a doctor at the local hospital.
- 2 The perfume you bought for your wife is in my bag.
- 3 Try not to get water all over the bathroom floor.
- 4 I'm going to climb the highest mountain in my country.
- 5 You really should go to bed. You're exhausted.
- 6 The food was excellent during our trip to Morocco.
- 7 The phone has been ringing all morning.
- 8 Is there a museum I can visit in your town?
- 9 I rode an elephant when I visited India last year.
- 10 You might see lions while you're on safari.
- 11 Christopher has a hot dog for lunch every day.
- 12 I ride my bike to the office each morning.
- 13 Only rich people can afford to go to that restaurant.

## 64

## 64.1

- 1 It's so warm outside. I'm going to invite **some** friends over for a barbecue.
- 2 **The** new secretary seems good but doesn't have much experience.
- 3 I read **some** really good books during my last vacation.
- 4 What happened in **the** kitchen? It's such a mess.

- 1 **The** shirt Liam bought for **the** party cost more than \$80.
- 2 My cousin has **a** really friendly dog.
- 3 While walking in the park, I spotted **a** rare bird.
- 4 I have **a** lot of friends who still live with their parents.
- 5 Paula has left **some** money on **the** kitchen table for you.
- 6 I think Brazil would be **a** fascinating country to visit.
- 7 I've just baked **some** cupcakes. Would you like to try one?
- 8 **The** cake you made for the fair was absolutely delicious.
- 9 My family's big. I have three brothers and **a** sister.
- 10 **The** blue whale is **the** biggest animal that has ever existed.
- 11 I asked **the** waiter for **a** large cup of coffee.
- 12 **The** saxophone is **a** difficult instrument to play.
- 13 India is **the** country I'd most like to visit.
- 14 We saw **a** bear on our trip through **the** mountains.

## 64.2

- 1 I don't go to work on Fridays. I look after my young son.
- 2 My son rides **a** bike to school each day.
- 3 In my country, people usually retire when they're about 60.
- 4 Colm works as **a** scientist at a large research centre.
- 5 You should make sure you get plenty of sleep before **the** exam tomorrow.
- 6 Irma buys her paint from the store by **the** café.
- 7 Bill got married to **a** woman he met at work.
- 8 **The** band I went to see last night was awful.
- 9 I'm still in touch with the friends I made while on vacation.
- 10 My aunt thought she saw **a** wolf in the woods today.
- 11 **The** shoes I bought yesterday are far too big.
- 12 My mom says that cats are much cleaner than dogs.
- 13 While I was traveling in Australia, I saw **a** kangaroo.
- 14 **The** president gave **a** long speech at the conference.

## 65

## 65.1

- 1 **This** is my new boyfriend, Dan.
- 2 **That** book is so interesting.
- 3 **That** was such a tasty pizza!
- 4 I'd like **those** grapes, please.
- 5 Do you like **this** shirt?
- 6 I want to see **that** movie tonight.
- 7 **These** are your glasses, right here.
- 8 Where did you buy **those** jeans?
- 9 Is **this** my cup of coffee?
- 10 **Those** shoes look great on you!
- 11 **This** is the perfect car for a family.
- 12 Is **that** your new motorcycle, Andy?

- 5 Who made **these** cakes?
- 6 **These** are my parents, Anna and Charles.
- 7 **This** wardrobe's so heavy!

## 65.2

- 1 That is my new house. It's just by the ocean.
- 2 This is your desk and computer.
- 3 That was an amazing goal. You should have seen it!

## 65.3

- 1 Those boots really suit you.
- 2 This is one of the best books I've read.
- 3 I'm sure I've seen this movie before.
- 4 I don't think this meat is cooked properly.

## 65.4

- 1 That is one of the most beautiful **castles that I've ever seen**.
- 2 I'll have a half kilo of those potatoes **and a bag of these apricots, please**.
- 3 Your most important role is **that of spokesperson for our company**.
- 4 The cars we drive today are safer **than those our parents used to drive**.
- 5 I like these jeans here, but I prefer **those with the stripe on them over there**.
- 6 This is the best coffee I've **ever had. It's absolutely delicious**.

## 66

## 66.1

- 1 We had no time to make lunch, so we went out for burgers instead.
- 2 I've missed the train again. I'm having no luck this week!
- 3 None of the clothes I tried on suited me.
- 4 We wanted a room with a view, but the receptionist said that there were none available.
- 5 I couldn't call you because there was no reception where I was.
- 6 I wanted to order apple pie, but there was none left.
- 7 None of my friends believed I saw a ghost.

## 66.2

- 1 There **aren't any** free seats.
- 2 I **have no** money left.
- 3 There **weren't any** more tickets.
- 4 Kinga **doesn't have any** friends at work.
- 5 It **takes no** time to get there.
- 6 There **was no** doubt that he did it.

## 66.3

- 1 **No** vegetarian food had been ordered for the convention.
- 2 There are **no** places left on the English course.
- 3 **None** of the staff wanted to work on Saturdays.
- 4 Amelia wanted to buy salad, but there wasn't **any** in the shop.
- 5 There was **no** time to think about the exam questions.
- 6 I called five hotels, but **none** had a free room for tonight.



- There wasn't **any** milk left, so I went to the shops.
- I had **no** energy left after work, so I watched some TV.
- None** of my friends wanted to go see a movie with me.
- There weren't **any** seats free on the train home.
- I wanted to try one of Sarah's cakes, but there were **none** left.
- No** dentists were available to see me, so I went home.

## 67

## 67.1

- David and his wife visit the Poconos every March.
- I go to the Indian restaurant in town every Monday.
- Each of us was given a sandwich and a drink.
- Every morning, Luis buys a coffee before work.
- This shampoo works for every type of hair.
- Each member of the team was given a prize.
- Maddy gave each of her children a thousand dollars.

## 67.2

- I go hiking with my dog every summer.
- Mona has a different type of earring in each ear.
- Our boss spoke to each employee in turn about the redundancies.
- Each player was given a medal by the president.

## 67.3

- Our manager has spoken to **each employee about the factory closing**.
- We gave every child at the party **a present and some cake**.
- My sister loves jewelry and **wears a bracelet on each wrist**.
- Every Thursday, I play golf **with one of my work colleagues**.
- Oscar makes sure he does **some exercise every morning**.
- The bakery near my house sells **every kind of bread you can think of**.
- Each city we visited in Spain **had incredibly beautiful architecture**.
- Every time I hear that song, I **remember the first time I heard it**.
- I love that author. I've read **every one of her books**.

## 68

## 68.1

- Neither** Dan nor Belinda could remember the way to the theater.
- Both** of my brothers go hiking in the hills on the weekend.
- Neither** of us could resist another piece of cake.
- Janet could afford to buy **either** the skirt or the dress.

- I invited **both** Sheila and Bill to my apartment in Paris.
- Both** Steve and Louis work really hard in their English class.
- Let's eat out **either** on Wednesday or Thursday.
- Neither** of the managers were at the meeting, unfortunately.
- I had to take **both** the cat and the dog to the veterinarian.
- Ramon can play **both** the electric and acoustic guitar.
- Chetana didn't really like **either** of the paintings on sale.

## 68.2

- Neither Gabriela nor Carlos came **to the party last night**.
- My niece wants to be either an **actress or an accountant**.
- Lisa wants both a puppy **and a laptop for her birthday**.
- Neither the apple pie nor **the cheesecake appealed to my aunt**.
- I want to see either an action film **or a comedy tonight**.
- Both my brother and sister **still live with our parents**.
- Neither the electricity nor the water **works properly in my new house**.

## 68.3

- Either my cousin or my parents **are** going to pick you up from the airport.
- Neither Paula's car nor her bike **is** working properly.
- I hope either the steak or the fish **is** on the menu today.
- Both the food and the drink **were** really overpriced.
- Neither my brother nor my sister **is** coming tomorrow.
- Either a cat or a dog **makes** a great pet for a family.
- Neither of us **wants** to go to the conference.
- I don't really like either of the **dresses** she bought.
- Neither the boss nor the workers **were** pleased about the deal.
- We're thinking about adopting both of the **puppies** we saw.

## 69

## 69.1

- car**
- castle**
- chess**
- thought**
- waterfall**

## 69.2

COMMON NOUNS:

**town, flower, hope, scissors**

PROPER NOUNS:

**France, September, George, Jupiter**

## 69.3

- When I finished my dinner, I washed all the **dishes**.
- I bought my new **watch** in Switzerland.
- A lot of **people** were waiting on the platform.
- We need to protect endangered **species**.

## 69.4

- Tim asked to borrow the **dictionary**.
- The **trains** always **leave** on time.
- The **women** were talking about the past.
- The mayor visited the **factory** in our city.
- I think there **is a mouse** in the kitchen.
- Those stories** were wonderful.
- The **sheep** was standing in the road.
- The **boxes** are full. We need to buy more.
- Carla rested her **foot** on a cushion.
- Ellie asked the **man** for directions.
- Maria put her **babies** into the **cots**.

## 70

## 70.1

COUNTABLE:

**question, apple, city**

UNCOUNTABLE:

**sugar, knowledge, money**

## 70.2

- Is there a bag of rice in the pantry?
- Can you get a carton of juice?
- Would you like a piece of cheese?

## 70.3

- There's some** milk in the fridge.
- I **didn't buy any** eggs at the store.
- We **didn't see any** bears in the mountains.
- There's some** juice left.
- I **got some** gifts for my birthday.
- I **don't have any** fruit in my bag.
- We **have some** important information.
- There **isn't any** rice in the cupboard.
- I **have some** money saved for the vacation.

## 70.4

- How much meat is there?
- How many cups of tea are there?
- How much coffee have you made?
- How many bars of chocolate do we have?
- How many jars of jam are there?
- How much juice will we need?
- How much milk is there?
- How many bowls of cereal are there?
- How many bananas do you have?
- How many bags of flour did you buy?
- How many cartons of milk are there?

## 71

## 71.1

- 1 Athletics **consists of a number of sports**, such as running and the high jump.
- 2 I think the news **is really boring**, but my parents always watch it.
- 3 The United States **has a population** of more than 300 million people.
- 4 Measles **is an illness** that usually affects children rather than adults.
- 5 *The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes* **is my favorite book**. I read it every summer.

## 71.2

- 1 The Netherlands **is** one of the world's biggest exporters of fresh flowers.
- 2 Gymnastics **wasn't** my first choice of sport.
- 3 *The Three Musketeers* **has** remained a popular novel since its publication in 1844.
- 4 Mathematics **was** my favorite subject when I was at school.

## 71.3

- 1 My family usually gets together each Christmas.
- 2 The company have hired a couple of new managers.
- 3 The government is refusing to reveal any details.
- 4 All the staff are going out for a meal after work.

## 72

## 72.1

- 1 Pablo has so many qualifications, **but he has almost no experience**.
- 2 We had quite a bit of difficulty finding **our way to the right block**.
- 3 Chiara has great ideas, **but not enough money to develop them**.
- 4 Don's had plenty of success, **and he's won three awards this year**.

## 72.2

CONCRETE:

**pencil, car, tree, table**

ABSTRACT:

**happiness, love, time, belief**

## 72.3

- 1 I met people from many different **cultures** at college.
- 2 After a lot of **thought**, I've decided to quit my job.
- 3 Being able to play an instrument is a great **skill** to have.
- 4 I've visited the museum a few **times** this year.
- 5 Don't give up **hope!** Your team might win.
- 6 I have a terrible **memory** for people's names.
- 7 It takes a lot of **time** to learn a foreign language.
- 8 Venice is famous for its **culture** and history.
- 9 Trisha loves to share her **memories** of the past.

- 10 There's a lot of **space** in my new apartment.

- 11 My uncle is always driving everywhere at high **speed**.
- 12 I made some lasting **friendships** while traveling.
- 13 There isn't enough **time** to finish the project.

## 73

## 73.1

- 1 During the heat wave, we kept the air-conditioning switched on all day.
- 2 My mother-in-law had her birthday party in the town hall.
- 3 I went to pick up my theater tickets from the ticket office.
- 4 Sally had a terrible headache, so she asked her boyfriend to get her some painkillers.
- 5 Marc looked at the night sky as he relaxed on his camping trip.
- 6 Alberto stood at the front door with his suitcase, waiting for the taxi.
- 7 As Ellie felt the first raindrops fall, she regretted not bringing a raincoat.

## 73.2

- 1 We've been waiting at this **bus stop** for an hour.
- 2 Graham cleans his **bathroom** on Saturday morning.
- 3 I like your new **haircut**, Ed. It looks great.
- 4 My **sister-in-law** works in the main hospital.
- 5 You'll need a **bottle opener** for those drinks.

## 73.3

- 1 The police are investigating the break-in at the bookstore.
- 2 The teapot fell onto the kitchen floor.
- 3 I bought some toothpaste at the drugstore.
- 4 I got up at sunrise and had a bowl of breakfast cereal.
- 5 Darren bought a birthday card for his son.

## 74

## 74.1

- 1 cardinal
- 2 ordinal
- 2 cardinal
- 4 cardinal
- 1 ordinal
- 2 ordinal
- 1 cardinal

## 74.2

- 1 nine thousand
- 2 848
- 3 417
- 4 six thousand, five hundred
- 5 nine hundred and fifty-eight
- 6 97
- 7 three thousand, five hundred and ninety
- 8 three hundred and fifty-nine

## 74.3

- 1 six million, eight hundred and forty thousand, two hundred and fifty
- 2 fourteen million, two hundred and twenty thousand, nine hundred and two
- 3 ninety million, three hundred and ten thousand

## 74.4

- 1 twelve point five
- 2 twenty-seven point five percent
- 3 two-thirds
- 4 thirty-two percent
- 5 six and three-quarters
- 6 fourteen point nine five
- 7 nineteen percent
- 8 two-fifths
- 9 six point three four
- 10 eight and a third
- 11 seventy-nine point four percent
- 12 eight and a half

## 75

## 75.1

- 1 **Lots of students** also have a part-time job.
- 2 **Only a few of my friends** came to my barbecue on Saturday.
- 3 There are **some good bands** performing tonight.
- 4 I **sent a few postcards** while I was traveling.
- 5 There is **lots of juice** in the fridge if you want some.

## 75.2

- 1 There **isn't** enough sugar to make a birthday cake.
- 2 The burger costs six euros? I'm afraid that's **too much**.
- 3 Do we have **enough** money to buy a car?
- 4 There are **too many** people on the bus this morning.
- 5 There **isn't enough** chicken to make dinner for everyone.
- 6 I bought **too much** fruit. Please take some!
- 7 **Is** there enough orange juice in the fridge for breakfast?
- 8 There are only two seats left. There are **too many** of us here.

## 75.3

- 1 **A lot of** people visit the mountains on the weekend.
- 2 I'm not rich, but I try to donate **a little** money to charity every month.
- 3 Sadly, there are **few** Sumatran tigers left in the world today.
- 4 I met **quite a few** new clients at the conference.
- 5 I have **little** patience for people who are always late. I'm always on time!
- 6 There's **quite a bit of** snow. Let's build a snowman!
- 7 **Lots of** people came to Craig's 40th birthday party.
- 8 Do you need some help with that report? I have **a little time** I can spare.
- 9 Be careful! That vase is worth quite **a bit of** money.



- 10 There are **a few** paintings in the museum I haven't seen. Can we stay a bit longer?  
 11 There are very **few** people I would lend money to, but my brother is one of them.  
 12 I don't have lots of friends, but I've got **a few** who I'm really close to.

### 75.4

- 1 I spent **less** time on this essay than I did last time.  
 2 The lecture was almost empty. There were **fewer** than 10 students there.  
 3 I'm earning **less** money with my new job, but the conditions are better.  
 4 **Fewer** people eat meat today in comparison with a decade ago.  
 5 The train leaves in **less** than half an hour. We should hurry!  
 6 There was much **less** traffic than usual on the way to work.  
 7 There are **fewer** than 5,000 black rhinos left in the wild.  
 8 **Fewer** young people are studying languages than in the past.  
 9 It's **less** than 10 minutes' walk to the historic part of the city.

### 75.5

- 1 We didn't go shopping because we didn't have enough money.  
 2 The weather was awful, but at least I made a few friends there.  
 3 There is much less traffic in the city than 15 years ago.  
 4 A male African elephant can weigh more than seven tons.  
 5 I received a lot of presents for my 30th birthday.

### 75.6

- 1 Marco was making **far too much noise**, so Ellie went out to the café.  
 2 I'm afraid it's bad news. Our company is making **less money than** it did last year.  
 3 Unfortunately **very little** can be done about the bad weather.  
 4 Do we have **enough pasta** to make lunch for all the family?  
 5 We have **lots of things** to pack. Do you think there's room in the box?  
 6 **Few people** come to the restaurant on a Monday evening. It's almost empty.  
 7 There are **quite a few sandwiches** left. Help yourself to one!  
 8 There were a **lot of people** waiting on the platform for the train.  
 9 There were **quite a few clothes** I liked, but I didn't buy any.  
 10 **Fewer than 10 people** work for our company. It's very cozy here.  
 11 The safari park costs **less than \$5** to visit. It's a real bargain.  
 12 We have **quite a bit of time** before we need to leave.

## 76

### 76.1

- 1 Almost all our customers are happy with the service they receive.  
 2 About half of the students failed the exam this year.  
 3 Just under a third of all people own a cat in my country.

### 76.2

- 1 There are as many as two exams **each month on my college course**.  
 2 Well over half of the country **consists of mountains and forests**.  
 3 Almost none of the money is left **following the expensive carnival**.  
 4 Approximately 75% of Earth's **surface is covered in water**.  
 5 As many as 7 out of 10 people **can speak a second language**.

### 76.3

- 1 You could be fluent in English in as little as two months.  
 2 In most cases, people recover quickly from food poisoning.  
 3 The children have eaten almost all the cakes.  
 4 About half the students failed the final exam.  
 5 As few as one in ten applications are successful.  
 6 Well over three-quarters of students use social media.  
 7 In a minority of cases, people go to prison.  
 8 There are as many as 25 public parks in my city.  
 9 My house is just under a mile away from the station.

## 77

### 77.1

- 1 us  
 2 you  
 3 him  
 4 she  
 5 it  
 6 they

### 77.2

- 1 Kelly's so angry with him.  
 2 Paula asked me to marry her.  
 3 Do you know what happened to them?  
 4 Mike gave **her** the money.

### 77.3

- 1 They went to the same music festival as last year.  
 2 I play soccer with my friends every weekend.  
 3 We visited Venice for our 20th wedding anniversary.

### 77.4

- 1 She saw him working in a shop in Edinburgh.  
 2 He gave us a ride to the movie theater.  
 3 He offered her a flower.

### 77.5

- 1 Jane cooked a new dish, but **it** tasted awful. **She** was so disappointed.  
 2 Tom asked Roger to water the plants. **He** watered **them** and went home.  
 3 The commuters waited for the train. **They** were angry because **it** was delayed.  
 4 Mike told his parents he wanted to study drama. **They** replied that **it** was a great choice.  
 5 Shona bought a coffee for Brian. **He** thanked **her** for it.

## 78

### 78.1

- 1 yourself  
 2 yourselves  
 3 him  
 4 her  
 5 itself  
 6 ourselves  
 7 them

### 78.2

- 1 I asked **myself** if I should leave my job.  
 2 You should pride **yourself** on your work, Phil.  
 3 Did Daniel injure **himself** when he fell off the wall?  
 4 Ed and Flora are teaching **themselves** to cook.  
 5 Sarah is preparing **herself** for the interview.  
 6 Did you and Claire enjoy **yourselves** at the party?

### 78.3

- 1 Tim **shaves** when he gets up in the morning.  
 2 Angela **cut herself** while she was chopping the onions.  
 3 The door **opened**, and my uncle walked into the room.  
 4 Chan **hurt himself** when he slipped on the ice.  
 5 Janet **feels** better after her illness.

### 78.4

- 1 I baked the cake myself. I hope you like it.  
 2 Most stores close at 5pm in my town.  
 3 Did the children behave themselves during the class?  
 4 Annie asked Peter and me to move the boxes.  
 5 The child sat by himself reading a book..  
 6 How was the party? Did you enjoy yourselves?  
 7 We were talking to each other when the phone rang.



## 78.5

- 1 My wife is going to paint the house herself.
- 2 Carlos admired himself in the mirror before leaving.
- 3 The CEO herself offered to help clean the office.
- 4 I enjoyed the evening, but the movie itself was bad.

## 78.6

- 1 My grandpa is a carpenter and **built this table himself**.
- 2 My cats hate each other **and fight almost every day**.
- 3 Betty is very selfish and **only thinks about herself**.
- 4 My sister and I call each other **every day to share the latest gossip**.
- 5 The children played in the park, **throwing snowballs at one another**.
- 6 Lee and Ben are helping **each other with their homework**.

## 78.7

- 1 Sharon is teaching **herself** how to knit.
- 2 It's hard to tear **yourself** away from a really good book.
- 3 Martin shaves each morning when he gets up.
- 4 I made some tea while the cake baked in the oven.
- 5 We found **ourselves** in a strange part of town. We were lost.
- 6 My grandparents have convinced **themselves** to go swimming each day.
- 7 How was the fair? Did the children enjoy **themselves** there?
- 8 The truck started to reverse, so we moved out of the way.
- 9 I'm familiarizing **myself** with the new software.
- 10 Jim and Ula are decorating their new house **themselves**. It's so much cheaper.
- 11 My arm really hurts. I hope I haven't broken it.
- 12 Our café prides **itself** on its excellent service.
- 13 I find it so hard to concentrate with all that noise.
- 14 It looks like the weather is improving. Let's go out.

## 79

## 79.1

- 1 What would you prefer? Tea or coffee?
- 2 There's a meeting in room 10.
- 3 I'm not feeling very well at all.
- 4 It was nothing. Probably just the cat playing.
- 5 Yes, it's half past five.
- 6 Of course. Pass it here.
- 7 No one's heard of him, sorry.

## 79.2

- 1 Everyone's asking why you're not at the party!
- 2 Did you buy anything when you were at the grocer's?
- 3 I was exhausted after checking everything.

## 79.3

- 1 I know absolutely **nothing** about electronics.
- 2 Libby doesn't want **anything** to eat at the moment.
- 3 I don't get on with my brother. We have **nothing** in common.
- 4 I didn't buy **anything** while I was at the store.
- 5 There's **nothing** to do here. I'm bored!
- 6 I think I just heard **something** downstairs.

## 80

## 80.1

- 1 **you** your **yours**
- 2 he **his** **his**
- 3 **she** her **hers**
- 4 **it** its **its**
- 5 we **our** **ours**
- 6 **they** their **theirs**

## 80.2

- 1 I saw the children playing with their dog.
- 2 You look very excited with your new present.
- 3 There's Silvia taking her dogs for a walk.

## 80.3

- 1 Where is their house?
- 2 This desk is yours.
- 3 Is that my charger there?
- 4 These books aren't theirs.
- 5 That is her coat.
- 6 Are these his glasses?
- 7 Which of these cups is mine?

## 80.4

- 1 **Their** IT system is modern, but **ours** needs replacing soon.
- 2 These earrings are **mine**, but that bracelet is **hers**.
- 3 **My** bag is the yellow one. Which one is **yours**?
- 4 The large boxes are **theirs**, but these small ones are **ours**.
- 5 **Her** parents live in the countryside, while **mine** live in the city.
- 6 If this is **yours**, then I don't know which laptop is **mine**.
- 7 Stacey put **her** lunch in the fridge. Are these sandwiches **yours**?
- 8 Katya parked **her** car by the park. Where did your parents park **theirs**?
- 9 We drive **our** cars on the right, whereas they drive **theirs** on the left.
- 10 **Your** father drives a sports car, but **mine** rides a bike.

## 80.5

- 1 Mary and Don's uncle
- 2 Ben's son
- 3 The students' grades
- 4 Sam and Ayshah's cat
- 5 Debbie's house
- 6 My parents' dog
- 7 Marco and Kate's car
- 8 My grandparents' house

- 9 Elsa's grandchild
- 10 Beth's parrot
- 11 The people's choice

## 80.6

- 1 The women's clothes are downstairs.
- 2 Pick the babies' toys up, please.
- 3 Your car's new, while mine is old.
- 4 That book is yours, and this one is mine!
- 5 Tom's computer is slow.
- 6 Hurry up! It's time you left for work.
- 7 My town is bigger than yours.
- 8 The children's food is here.
- 9 That bag over there is yours.
- 10 These are the ladies' coats.
- 11 My parents' house is small.
- 12 The men's changing room is there.
- 13 The dog can't find its home.

## 80.7

- 1 I don't have any money **left to go on vacation this year**.
- 2 The nearest town has a swimming pool **and a bowling alley**.
- 3 Have you got any free time **to help me with this project**?
- 4 My dad hasn't got a phone or **an email account**.
- 5 My wife's from a big family and has **two brothers and two sisters**.
- 6 Has your brother got **red hair and a long beard**?
- 7 I'm very worried that my son **doesn't have any friends at college**.

## 80.8

- 1 Yes, I do. How can I help?
- 2 No, she hasn't. Why do you ask?
- 3 Yes, I do. It's in my bag.
- 4 No, we don't. There's one tomorrow.
- 5 Yes, it has. There are two lines.

## 81

## 81.1

- 1 I met a man who has sailed around the world.
- 2 The book that you lent me was really exciting.
- 3 The dessert that Misha ordered looks delicious.
- 4 Laura invited some people who she knows from college.
- 5 The palace that I was hoping to visit was closed.
- 6 Sanjay is moving to a house that is close to the sea.
- 7 I loved the band which performed on stage.

## 81.2

- 1 My son has a camera which takes wonderful photos.
- 2 The milk that you bought yesterday has turned sour.
- 3 The woman who was just speaking to you is incredibly rich.
- 4 Where did you get the hat you're wearing?

## 81.3

- 1 Ben works for a company **which produces kitchen equipment**.
- 2 Do you like the shirt **that I bought at the market today**?
- 3 Fatima showed me the dog **that she wants to adopt**.
- 4 Betty is playing a woman **who dreams of becoming an astronaut**.
- 5 This is the villa **which we're planning to buy**.
- 6 There are only two stores **that sell that particular part**.
- 7 My dad studied with the woman **who lives over the road**.
- 8 Does Mira have an umbrella **that she could lend me**?

## 82

## 82.1

- 1 Den has a new sports car, which he spent all his savings on.
- 2 The Statue of Liberty, which is on a small island, is popular with tourists.
- 3 Sam has a lovely dog, which he takes for a walk each morning.

## 82.2

- 1 My new sweater, **which is** made of wool, cost \$40.
- 2 I teach many international students, many of **whom** are Indian.
- 3 David's cat, **which is** usually very calm, just scratched me!
- 4 My wife, **who** is an optician, enjoys her job very much.
- 5 He has two daughters, both of **whom** are lawyers.

## 82.3

- 1 I've recently bought a house, which I'm now decorating.
- 2 My nephew, who is only seven years old, is learning to play the violin.
- 3 The singer thanked her fans, many of whom were at the event.
- 4 My car, which I only bought last week, has already broken down.
- 5 Jill, who has worked here for 15 years, is extremely reliable.

## 82.4

- 1 Defining
- 2 Non-defining
- 3 Non-defining
- 4 Defining

## 83

## 83.1

- 1 I'll never forget that afternoon **when** Paula told me she wanted to move to another country.
- 2 Jane, **whose** sister you work with, is giving the speech this afternoon.
- 3 A long break and some sunshine is exactly **what** Kelly needs right now.
- 4 Toni's café, **where** you worked as a student, has closed down.
- 5 I'm interviewing a woman **whose** brother used to work here.
- 6 I'm looking forward to a time **when** we don't have to work so late.
- 7 That sofa is just **what** we need for the living room.
- 8 The companies have an agreement **whereby** they share customer data.

## 83.2

- 1 I thought it was Monday **when** Manuela was supposed to come.
- 2 I have no idea **what** he's bought me for my birthday.
- 3 We visited the part of India **where** my parents grew up.
- 4 Liam, **whose** report you've just read, is an excellent lawyer.
- 5 Stratford-upon-Avon, **where** Shakespeare was born, is lovely.

## 83.3

- 1 In 2008, when I got my first job here, I worked in the warehouse.
- 2 This is Miguel, whose sister works in the HR department.
- 3 I'm not sure what this is, but I know I like it.
- 4 I've already broken the phone that I bought last week.

## 83.4

- 1 2013 was the year **when I decided to study art**.
- 2 This is the store **where we buy our groceries**.
- 3 That singer, **whose songs Jane loves**, is performing tonight.
- 4 This dress is exactly **what I need for Abigail's party**.

## 84

## 84.1

- 1 I want to finish this puzzle, **however long it takes**.
- 2 Catrina said she'd support me, **whichever decision I make**.
- 3 You can wear whatever you like **for John's birthday dinner tonight**.
- 4 Tony tries to visit his parents **whenever he gets the chance**.
- 5 Whoever was in the kitchen last **has left a terrible mess**.

## 84.2

- 1 **Whatever** did Jon do to make you so angry with him?
- 2 We're going to be late, **whichever** route we take.
- 3 Elsie told me that she'd be there to help **whenever** I needed her.
- 4 The engagement's not a secret. You can tell **whoever** you want.
- 5 **Whoever** won first prize must be a really good artist.
- 6 **Whenever** I hear that music, I always think of Paris.
- 7 My new kitten follows me **wherever** I go in the house.

## 84.3

- 1 I'm going to study drama, **whatever** my parents say.
- 2 John's in front of the TV **whenever** I go to see him.
- 3 **Wherever** Andy's gone, he's forgotten his wallet.
- 4 **Whoever** painted this clearly has a vivid imagination.
- 5 I do some gardening **whenever** I have a spare moment.
- 6 **Whichever** student answers this question will win a prize.
- 7 I'm going to finish this novel, **however** long it takes!
- 8 **Whatever** it is John's cooked, it tastes absolutely terrible.
- 9 **However** much Anthony earns, he always wants more.

## 85

## 85.1

- 1 There was such a mess after the party.
- 2 There's been an explosion at the laboratory.
- 3 There's going to be a jazz band at the concert hall tonight.
- 4 There are some lovely hats for sale in that store.
- 5 There was some awful pollution on the beach.
- 6 I'm afraid there isn't any chocolate cake left.

## 85.2

- 1 There **is** still some milk in the fridge.
- 2 There **were** huge crowds yesterday.
- 3 There **hasn't been** an inspection so far.
- 4 There **aren't** any cakes left, sorry.
- 5 There **was** a storm last night.
- 6 There **will be** a presentation tomorrow.
- 7 There **is** a heatwave at the moment.
- 8 There **have been** no thefts since June.
- 9 There **will be** rain later today.

## 85.3

- 1 There have been a lot of complaints **about the poor service at the restaurant**.
- 2 There will be a meeting to **discuss the forthcoming redundancies**.
- 3 There's going to be a party **to celebrate our silver wedding anniversary**.



4 There weren't many **cars in my village when I was a child.**

5 There are not enough **seats for all the people here.**

### 85.4

1 There **were** a lot of visitors at yesterday's exhibition.

2 There **aren't** any tickets for the show this evening.

3 There **is** a lot of sugar in the recipe for Cathy's cake.

4 **Is there** a party to celebrate Olive's 90th birthday tomorrow?

5 There **is** going to be a soccer match this afternoon.

6 **Was** there enough room for all the guests?

7 Do you know if there **is** another train tonight?

8 There **has been** some terrible weather recently.

9 There **weren't** many students at the lecture.

10 Bill's so busy at work. There **is** a deadline soon.

11 There **is** water all over the floor.

What happened?

12 I'm sure there **won't be** another unexpected election this year.

### 85.5

1 There's plenty of food in the fridge.

2 There is a large dog in the street.

3 Are there any good cafés in your town?

4 There are a lot of people selling fruit and vegetables.

5 There won't be another bus today.

6 Do you know if there is any rice left?

7 There are lots of people waiting outside.

8 Will there be an exam at the end of the course?

9 Is there going to be a meeting this afternoon?

## 86

### 86.1

1 Awful! It's pouring.

2 It was in 1564, I think.

3 It's quarter to three.

4 No, it's just a five-minute walk.

### 86.2

1 Distance

2 Day / Date / Month / Year

3 Weather

4 Time

### 86.3

1 It is essential that all candidates **arrive 15 minutes before the interview.**

2 It's often said that **absence makes the heart grow fonder.**

3 If you don't start working harder, **it's unlikely you'll pass the exam.**

4 It was so nice to meet **you and your husband at the party.**

5 It is difficult for foreigners to **pronounce some words in my language.**

6 It is dangerous to drive **too fast on the highway.**

7 It would be great if **we could meet for coffee next weekend.**

8 It's been impossible for me **to find a free moment to call you.**

9 It's such a shame that it **rained every day on our vacation.**

10 It was a surprise to discover **that we share the same birthday.**

11 It is wonderful to lie in a field **and look up at the stars.**

12 It's been 40 minutes. It looks **like the bus isn't coming.**

### 86.4

1 It is true **that** being a doctor involves a lot of hard work.

2 It is important **to** lock all the doors when you go out.

3 It is useful **to** write down important information in a notebook.

4 It is possible **that** Andre forgot that the party is tonight.

## 87

### 87.1

1 It's honey, not sugar, that **you should add to the cake.**

2 It was the manager, not the intern, **who broke the photocopier.**

3 It was Neil Armstrong, not Buzz Aldrin, **who first walked on the moon.**

4 It was Poland that I visited, **not Germany.**

5 It's on Tuesday that we're meeting, **not Thursday.**

6 It was James, not John, who **I saw at the theater.**

### 87.2

1 What I really hate is people singing out of tune.

2 What Karen needs is to get more sleep.

3 What I enjoyed most were the fascinating ruins.

### 87.3

1 **The person** I admire most in the world is my grandfather.

2 **The one thing** I'll never forget is when I won the national prize.

3 **The reason** they gave for firing me was ridiculous.

4 **The country** I loved visiting most was Montenegro.

5 **The subject** I enjoyed most at school was history.

### 87.4

1 It's the location that I like most about my home.

2 What I want to do is travel around the world.

3 The animal I'd like to see while on safari is the tiger.

4 What Dave disliked most was the bad acting.

5 It was my neighbor who told me about the flood.

## 88

### 88.1

1 Hardly had it stopped raining when the children ran out to play.

2 Only after my departure did I realize that I had forgotten to say goodbye.

3 No sooner had I arrived at the airport than I decided I wasn't going to leave the country.

4 Never before have we achieved such amazing results.

5 Little did we know that the boy would one day become president.

6 Rarely have I had such a positive response to a proposal.

7 Only when I opened the letter did I realize that I was going to college.

### 88.2

1 **Not since the 1980s have I known such a hot summer.**

2 **Only sometimes do you witness such kindness** from strangers.

3 **No sooner had we finished the project** than the next one began.

4 **Little did they suspect how expensive** the vacation would be.

### 88.3

1 Neither do I! 2 So am I. 3 So do I.

## 89

### 89.1

1 Ella woke up before dawn and **made herself a strong cup of coffee.**

2 I need to tell my parents I'm leaving college, **but I'm not sure how.**

3 We need to hire a new mechanic **but don't know where to find one.**

4 I'd like to cook something special **for dinner, but I can't decide what.**

5 I hope Jamie comes to the wedding, **but I don't think he will.**

6 Someone with real talent painted **this, but we don't know who.**

### 89.2

1 Neither of them, to be honest.

2 At the market on Church Road.

3 A bit tough, actually.

4 Monday morning, 9am.

### 89.3

1 I asked Charlie to stop playing soccer, but he didn't.

2 I'm trying to make an omelet, but I don't know how.

3 I want to move to a new area, but I don't know where.

4 I really enjoy skiing, but my brother doesn't.

5 Someone's left a present, but I'm not sure who.



- 6 I want to buy one of these laptops, but I'm not sure which.
- 7 Catalina said she'd come to the party, but I don't think she will.
- 8 There is a museum somewhere, but I'm not sure where.
- 9 I tried to lift the box, but I wasn't strong enough.
- 10 My wife can swim really well, but I can't.
- 11 I want to study something at college, but I'm not sure what.
- 12 Anne and Si passed the exam, but Matt didn't.

90

## 90.1

- 1 There are fewer factories here than there used to be.
- 2 I was going to buy some shoes but couldn't afford to.
- 3 I tried to fix the bathtub but wasn't able to.

## 90.2

- 1 There aren't as many cars on the streets **as there used to be**.
- 2 I meant to call my grandma on her birthday, **but I completely forgot to**.
- 3 Sean could have studied at Oxford University, **but he chose not to**.
- 4 Liz hasn't completed as much work **as she intended to**.
- 5 I've eaten much more cake **than I meant to**.

## 90.3

- 1 He didn't want to.
- 2 Yes, she's determined to.
- 3 Yes, she seemed to be.
- 4 That's right. He promised.
- 5 There's no need to be.

## 90.4

- 1 This software is more complicated than it needs to be.
- 2 Mia didn't come to the party even though she promised.
- 3 I'd love to try hang gliding, but I don't have the courage.

## 90.5

- 1 Maurice wasn't at the convention, even though he had hoped to be.
- 2 I was thinking of studying French at college but decided not to.
- 3 Shelly isn't at school today, but she ought to be.
- 4 I wasn't able to go on the trip, but I did want to.
- 5 The dish isn't vegetarian, even though it's supposed to be.

## 90.6

- 1 Lisa invited me to visit Spain, and I told her I'd love to.
- 2 We asked Mario to play golf with us, but he didn't want to.
- 3 I wanted to see you this summer, but I won't be able to.

- 1 We can alter the dress for you. Would you like us to?
- 2 I've never seen the Great Wall of China, but I'd love the chance to.
- 3 Gerard doesn't have a motorcycle now, but he used to.
- 4 Mary was going to buy a dog, but she decided not to.
- 5 I dream of buying that apartment, but I can't afford to.

91

## 91.1

- 1 There aren't any cafés here, but **there are some nice ones by the park**.
- 2 The computers at work are much **slower than the ones in my old office**.
- 3 If you need to borrow a raincoat, **you can take one of mine**.
- 4 I don't own a drill, I'm afraid, **but my brother-in-law does**.

## 91.2

- 1 Cathy refuses to get a phone, though her boyfriend **has got one**.
- 2 I really don't like this sofa, but I **like the red one** over there.
- 3 There isn't any juice left, but I think **there's some** in the fridge.
- 4 I love your boots. I saw **some similar ones** in the boutique by the park.
- 5 I liked the look of the cakes in the bakery, so I **bought some**.

## 91.3

- 1 My car is ruined. I need to buy a new one.
- 2 We don't like fishing, but our dad does.
- 3 We'd like a dessert. Could you recommend one?
- 4 I really like cooking, and so does my husband.
- 5 If that dress is too expensive, we have cheaper ones, too.
- 6 Zhao liked the artwork, but I didn't.
- 7 I own few books myself, but there are lots at the library.
- 8 That looks delicious. Can I try some?

## 91.4

- 1 We'd prefer it if you did.
- 2 I don't think so, sorry.
- 3 I'm afraid I don't.
- 4 I hope so.
- 5 I'm afraid not.
- 6 I did it this morning.

92

## 92.1

- 1 My boyfriend gave me a **beautiful gold** necklace for my birthday.
- 2 My grandma's knitting me a **dark-green woolen** sweater.

- 3 We went to see the **ancient Aztec** ruins while in Mexico.
- 4 We adopted a **cute friendly** kitten from the shelter.

## 92.2

SIZE:  
**little, tiny, massive**  
 SHAPE:  
**diamond-shaped, round, square**  
 AGE:  
**young, ancient, old**  
 COLOR:  
**pink, light-blue, red**  
 NATIONALITY:  
**Argentinian, Vietnamese, French**  
 MATERIAL:  
**china, cotton, steel**

## 92.3

GENERAL OPINION:  
**awful, good, nasty, wonderful**  
 SPECIFIC OPINION:  
**clever, friendly, delicious, beautiful**

## 92.4

- 1 I read this exciting new French novel while on vacation.
- 2 That small old brown dog belongs to Harry.
- 3 Ebru made this lovely white silk dress.

## 92.5

- 1 Claude has a **beautiful old Indian** rug in his living room.
- 2 Nigel's bought himself a **big red American** sports car.
- 3 Catalina keeps her jewelry in a **small black wooden** box.
- 4 My granddaughter is engaged to a **charming tall young** man.

## 92.6

- 1 Everyone found the presentation extremely **boring**.
- 2 The instructions are so **confusing**. I don't know what to do.
- 3 Selma and Bob are **interested** in wildlife.
- 4 We were all **amazed** when Sharon won the race.

93

## 93.1

- 1 Ola is a very talented cook.
- 2 It was boiling hot outside.
- 3 They were ecstatic when they won the tournament.
- 4 My new shoes are not very comfortable at all.
- 5 Our plumber is not particularly reliable.
- 6 Marty was really hungry and ordered two hamburgers.

## 93.2

- 1 Extreme
- 2 Absolute
- 3 Classifying
- 4 Extreme

## 93.3

GRADABLE:

interesting, cold, intelligent, large

NON-GRADABLE:

awesome, square, perfect, wooden

## 93.4

- The weather was extremely **bad**. It rained every day.
- The cookies that Ellie made **were not very tasty**.
- I found the exam almost **impossible to finish in time**.
- Our business is reasonably **successful, but it could do better**.
- This antique vase is quite **unique**. There are no others like it.
- Martin was absolutely **terrified when he saw the bear**.

## 93.5

- The food at the wedding wasn't particularly impressive.
- Hikaru speaks fairly good English, but she makes mistakes.
- The rooms in the hotel were really awful.
- Our old car is still in reasonably good condition.

## 93.6

- I can't criticize his cakes. They're absolutely **perfect**.
- The clothes here are of good quality and **reasonably** priced.
- The concert was absolutely **awful**. She simply can't sing!
- There's a wonderful **medieval** castle in my town.
- The software is **fairly** easy to use and won't cause too many problems.
- It's **freezing** outside! Make sure you wear a hat.

## 94

## 94.1

- Al's new car is faster than mine.
- The weather was colder than we'd hoped for.
- Mount Everest is higher than K2.
- The festival was better than I had expected.
- Our house is larger than our neighbor's.
- The Eiffel Tower is taller than the Statue of Liberty.

## 94.2

- faster
- more beautiful
- happier
- hotter
- younger
- thinner
- colder
- more complicated
- earlier
- more tiring
- worse
- more popular
- bigger
- lazier
- better
- angrier
- closer
- more difficult

## 94.3

- Danny's dog is much **larger than mine**.
- The wedding was more **extravagant than I'd expected**.
- Karen is only slightly **older than her husband**.

- Going to work by bike is **less stressful than taking a train**.
- Electric cars are much more **common than they were 10 years ago**.
- I'm less sporty than my **elder brother**. I prefer **reading to football**.
- My daughter is much more **sensible than she used to be**.

## 94.4

- The countryside is far **more quiet** than the city.
- The Caspian Sea is **more shallow** than the Black Sea.
- The new software we have to use couldn't be **more simple**.
- The road was **more narrow** than I thought, and I scratched the car.
- Jane is really mad with you. I've never seen anyone **more angry**.

## 94.5

- Lisbon is much farther than Seville.
- The Sahara Desert is hotter than the Atacama.
- I feel happier since I moved to Barcelona.
- The weather in California is much better than in Montana.
- A cheetah is faster than a lion.
- Tom is only slightly taller than his brother, Joe.
- These jeans are much tighter than my old ones.
- The old buildings in my town are more beautiful than the modern ones.
- My new apartment is slightly smaller than my old one.
- My city has a worse transportation system than yours.
- The staff in this hotel are much more friendly than in the other one.
- This book is much more interesting than the last one I read.

## 94.6

- The castle is **quite a bit older** than the skyscrapers.
- She was **just a bit quicker** than me in the race.
- The weather was **much better** than was forecast.
- A salad is **a lot healthier** than a hamburger.
- My colleagues are **much more experienced** than me.
- A cruise liner is **a lot bigger** than a sail boat.
- I go to bed **slightly earlier** on Sunday evenings.

## 95

## 95.1

- The more responsibility I take on, **the more stressed I get**.
- The faster he drove, **the more scared she became**.
- The more I earn, **the more I seem to spend**.
- The longer I live here, **the more I want to move away**.
- The more you study, **the easier the exam will be**.

- The farther Joe walked, **the more tired he became**.
- The colder it gets, **the more clothes you should wear**.

## 95.2

- The **bigger the cake**, the more there will be to eat.
- Ola's getting **more and more skilled** at the guitar.
- It's getting **colder and colder**. Don't forget your scarf!
- The faster you work, the **earlier you'll finish** the project.
- My nephew gets **taller and taller** every time I see him.

## 95.3

- The more, the merrier.
- The sooner, the better.
- The stronger, the better.
- The more glamorous, the better.

## 95.4

- Everyone is getting more and more concerned about climate change.
- Philip's sunflowers keep growing taller and taller.
- The exam gets harder and harder each year.
- Robots are becoming more and more sophisticated.

## 96

## 96.1

- I'm sure your pasta will be as tasty as usual.
- Dogs are not so easy to look after as cats.
- I hope the movie is as good as the book.
- This hat is twice as expensive as the other one.
- The results are not as good as we had hoped.
- I hope the new chef is as talented as Jean-Louis.

## 96.2

- I'm not as confident as I was before.
- The food wasn't half as good as we'd hoped.
- Rome is nowhere near as big as Paris.
- He told us to finish as quickly as possible.
- It's not quite as cold as last winter.
- Ula doesn't call as much as she used to.
- The journey took twice as long as usual.
- Ben was as quiet as a mouse.
- Ed is almost as old as my aunt.
- It cost just as much as it did last time.

## 96.3

- The exam was **just as** hard as I had expected.
- The skyscrapers here are nowhere near **as big as** in Shanghai.
- This restaurant is **twice as** expensive as the others.
- The café is **almost as** big as the church.
- The house is **not quite** as easy to find as we thought.
- The singer was nowhere **near** as good as I hoped.
- The play lasted twice **as** long as I expected.



- It's **not nearly** as cold as we'd imagined.
- The supermarket was not **quite** as busy as I feared.
- The dress is **twice as** big as I thought it would be.
- The other buildings are nowhere near **as** tall as the clock tower.
- The company results were not quite **so** good as last year's.
- The new store will be as popular **as** the others.
- This was **not nearly** as easy to make as I expected.

## 97

## 97.1

- The pianist played the most beautiful music I've ever heard.
- The Eiffel Tower is still the tallest structure in Paris.
- Parrots are some of the most intelligent animals.

## 97.2

- Pablo has the strangest **taste in music in our class**.
- Glasgow is the biggest **city in Scotland**.
- Ania has the curliest hair **in my family**.
- China has the largest **population in the world**.
- Our soccer team was the least **successful in the league**.

## 97.3

- sweetest
- most frightening
- best
- slowest
- easiest
- happiest
- most careful
- worst
- thinnest
- dirtiest
- smartest
- heaviest
- biggest
- most boring
- most beautiful
- most dangerous
- tidiest
- newest
- most expensive

## 97.4

- That café is one of the most expensive places to eat.
- We bought this vase because it was the most attractive.
- My grandma always says the sweetest things about me.

## 97.5

- The Mississippi is the longest river in the United States.
- The sailfish is the fastest fish in the ocean.
- Death Valley is the hottest place on earth.
- Bungee jumping is the most exciting thing I've ever done.
- Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in France.
- My sister is the most creative person I know.
- I felt like the luckiest person alive when I won the lottery.
- Some of the oldest paintings can be found in local caves.

## 97.6

- This is the **worst** coffee I've ever drunk.
- Daniel is the **fastest** boy in my class.

- I think this has been the **hottest** day of the year so far.
- This feels like the **slowest** train I've ever been on.
- Ashalata is the **friendliest** manager at work.
- This is the **least** expensive car we have on sale at the moment.
- That's the **most exciting** news I've heard today.
- Mr. Clarke is the **strictest** teacher in school.
- Michael lives the **farthest** away from our office.
- That was one of the **saddest** movies I've ever seen.

## 97.7

- Elvira was the **fastest** cyclist in the race.
- I chose the **least expensive** drink on the menu.
- This is **by far the tastiest** hamburger I've ever eaten.
- The Burj Khalifa is one of the **tallest** buildings in the world.
- It's the **worst** summer I've ever known.
- This is the **best book** I've read for ages.
- Paul is the **happiest** person I know.
- Anna is the **most worried** of us all about tomorrow's inspection.
- London is the **biggest** city in England.
- Don is **easily the tallest** person in our class.
- Feng is **one of the most talented** musicians I know.
- Claire's is **by far the cheapest** salon in town.

## 98

## 98.1

- Tim **kindly** helped Jo with her bags.
- The kids played **happily** with the dog.
- This bus is moving so **slowly**!
- Charles **greedily** ate all the chocolate.
- It started to rain **heavily**.
- Carla shouted **angrily** at her computer.
- Ed's mom thinks he drives too **quickly**.
- My doctor told me to eat **healthily**.
- Magda waited **nervously** for her results.

## 98.2

- noisily
- reluctantly
- well
- shyly
- happily
- long
- calmly
- straight
- easily
- hard
- softly
- dangerously
- repeatedly
- clumsily
- late
- badly
- fast
- stylishly

## 98.3

- That child has been waiting **patiently for more than an hour**.
- Anne advised me to arrive **early for the interview tomorrow**.
- George left the room quietly, **so as not to wake up the baby**.
- The number of people studying **English has increased rapidly**.
- Alina is doing fine after **her operation last week**.
- I think I answered **all the questions in the test correctly**.
- I worry a lot about how **fast my daughter rides her bike**.

## 98.4

- Ella **gently** stroked her new kitten.
- Marvin played the piano **beautifully** last night.
- Louis has worked **hard** to improve his English.
- An eagle flew **high** above the ruined castle.
- My stapler has **mysteriously** disappeared.
- Kathy sang very **well** at the performance.
- Tom shouted **angrily** at the TV when his team lost.
- Sangita wasn't **badly** injured in the accident.
- I went **straight** to my boss's office to talk to her.
- Claudio passed the final test **easily**.

## 99

## 99.1

- Ola played the most beautifully **of all the musicians**.
- Carlo speaks English more **fluently than he does German**.
- You've been working harder **since you got the promotion**.
- Ahmed drove more carefully **when it started to snow**.

## 99.2

- earlier / earliest
- faster / fastest
- more regularly / most regularly
- harder / hardest
- better / best
- more stylishly / most stylishly

## 99.3

- I usually get up earlier during the week.
- A cheetah can run much faster than a human.
- Juan comes here less frequently than he used to.

## 99.4

- I should have looked **more closely** at my contract.
- My employees **work less efficiently** when they're tired.
- Who **performed better** in the test, you or your sister?
- Joan gets up **the earliest** in our family.
- My teacher said I should **try harder** in class.
- Lena has to **travel the farthest** to get to our office.
- Our cat can **jump much higher** than our dog.

## 100

## 100.1

- Juan's cake was very popular. Everyone wanted more.
- The two vases were only slightly different to each other.
- Eric thought the test was fairly straightforward.
- Phil's feeling remarkably fit considering how ill he was.



① I don't think it's a particularly difficult mountain to climb.

② The house at the end of the road looks really unusual.

### 100.2

STRONGER:

**remarkably, really, extremely, very**

WEAKER:

**fairly, slightly, barely, not particularly**

### 100.3

GRADING:

**slightly, fairly, very, not particularly**

NON-GRADING:

**completely, totally, absolutely, utterly**

### 100.4

ENTIRELY:

**totally, thoroughly, completely, utterly**

ALMOST ENTIRELY:

**largely, mainly, mostly, virtually**

### 100.5

① Marta's painting is virtually complete.

② I thought the lecture was fairly interesting.

③ Beatriz was absolutely thrilled to hear my news.

④ Craig looks completely different from his brother.

### 100.6

① Unfortunately, the hotel we stayed in was utterly awful.

② We found the music festival completely brilliant this year.

③ The students' handwriting was barely legible.

④ The food in the canteen is remarkably good.

⑤ It was nearly impossible, but we reached the summit in the end.

### 100.7

① The play had almost started **by the time we found the theater**.

② It's perfectly acceptable to **wear jeans to work on Fridays**.

③ This old phone is absolutely **useless without its charger**.

④ We were completely exhausted **when we reached the summit**.

⑤ Jon is extremely talented **and should study art at college**.

⑥ Timothy has essentially finished **writing his PhD thesis**.

## 101

### 101.1

① It looks like Sanchez is about to score!

② I've just knocked over that vase. I'm so sorry.

③ We've already packed everything for the move.

④ The chicken's not ready. It's still cooking in the oven.

⑤ Sarah looked like she was about to fall asleep.

⑥ The bus hasn't arrived yet. I'm going to be home late.

### 101.2

① Future

② Past

③ Past

④ Ongoing

⑤ Ongoing

### 101.3

① I have **just** received a letter from an old friend.

② Mizuho has **already** been to Paris three times before.

③ Have you been introduced to Tonia's parents **yet**?

④ The judges are **about to** reveal the winner of the competition.

⑤ I've **just** finished my final exam. It's such a relief.

⑥ I haven't finished the book you lent me **yet**.

⑦ Maria has **just** told me she is quitting her job.

⑧ The concert had **already** begun by the time we arrived.

⑨ Lisa has **just** returned from her trip around South America.

⑩ I was **about to** leave, when I remembered the oven was still on.

⑪ The new block on Park Street isn't finished **yet**.

⑫ Hurry up, everyone! The train is **about to** leave.

⑬ I've **already** told Anna that the meeting has started.

### 101.4

① Vanessa is still working **for the bank, isn't she?**

② We have already spent **all the money we saved**.

③ Has Zahra visited **the National Gallery yet?**

④ Giuseppe's restaurant **is still the best in town**.

⑤ Clive looks like he's **about to give a speech**.

⑥ We still haven't heard **back from the plumber**.

### 101.5

① Mesut still hasn't given back the \$30 I lent him.

② Leroy is still the best player on the team.

③ Has Timo shown you around the new office yet?

④ The guests have already eaten all of the birthday cake.

⑤ I've just seen your brother walking out of the police station.

⑥ Jess is still living in Aberdeen, isn't she?

## 102

### 102.1

① Ola goes to the gym **very often**.

② It **hardly ever** rains in the desert.

③ I **regularly** visit my gran.

④ I **usually** go shopping on Saturday.

⑤ She **frequently** goes running.

⑥ We **always** go to France on vacation.

### 102.2

ALL OR MOST OF THE TIME:

**nearly always, very often, usually**

SOME OF THE TIME:

**regularly, sometimes, occasionally**

NOT OFTEN OR NOT AT ALL:

**rarely, hardly ever, almost never, never**

### 102.3

① Karen is hardly ever in the office on Fridays.

② I visit my parents about once a year.

③ The photocopier at work is nearly always broken.

④ Mira goes to the gym three times a week.

### 102.4

① Benny's very reliable and **is almost never late for work**.

② Carlita goes swimming at **least five times a week**.

③ Ella often stays at work **until after 10pm**.

④ I come from central Australia, **where it hardly ever rains**.

⑤ When do you usually **finish work in the evening?**

⑥ Ania plays badminton with her cousin **every Sunday morning**.

## 103

### 103.1

① It was so windy **that we couldn't fly a kite**.

② You children are so **much better behaved than mine**.

③ The bride wore such a **stylish dress for the wedding**.

④ It was so hot that we **all decided to go swimming**.

⑤ I've never seen such a **beautifully decorated cake before**.

### 103.2

① The cake Carlos made for the party was so tasty.

② Your exam results are so much better this year.

③ This store sells such lovely clothes.

④ Your brother owns such a beautiful villa.

### 103.3

① Colm's job looks **so** interesting, but it's very badly paid.

② My new phone's **so much** better than my old one.

③ Everyone had **such** a great time at the school reunion.

④ Hank is **so** generous. He gave me a watch for my birthday.

⑤ The new intern works **so much** harder than the old one.

⑥ It was **such** a shock when our boss said he was leaving.

⑦ Lorna's **such** a talented musician.

⑧ The weather was **so** bad that we decided to cancel the barbecue.

### 103.4

① My little sister is **such** a good dancer. She should take classes.

② The match was **so** disappointing. No one scored.

③ The weather is **so much** warmer in Florida. You should move here.

④ Kirsty's **so** funny. She always makes me laugh.

⑤ Sandra is **such** a good cook. Everything she makes is delicious.

## 104

## 104.1

- 1 If you're too cold, close the window.
- 2 Do you think we have enough money to buy this house?
- 3 Bob was too tired to concentrate on cooking the meal.

## 104.2

- 1 I'm not **rich enough** to afford those shoes.
- 2 Michael is **too young** to watch that movie.
- 3 The water is **warm enough** to go for a swim.
- 4 My neighbor always plays his music **too loudly**.
- 5 This bookcase is **too heavy** for me to move.
- 6 My French isn't **good enough** to understand Pierre.
- 7 The exercise was **too hard** for a total beginner.

## 104.3

- 1 We have enough time to catch the last bus.
- 2 If you're not warm enough, you should put on a sweater.
- 3 Do we have enough food for all the guests tonight?
- 4 The tickets for the rock concert were too expensive.
- 5 Norbert isn't tall enough to reach the bottle.
- 6 The café wasn't too far, so we walked there.
- 7 The professor spoke too quietly for us to hear.
- 8 I'm not rich, but I earn enough to pay the rent.
- 9 I tried my best in the race, but I wasn't fast enough.

## 105

## 105.1

- 1 There's a café by the church.
- 2 The meeting is on Monday morning.
- 3 Mia was nervous before going in to speak to her boss.
- 4 Dan put the flowers on the table.
- 5 Peter works at the local airport.
- 6 Julie gave her teacher her homework after the lesson.

## 105.2

- 1 Before leaving for work, I wash the dishes.
- 2 I have an English class on Tuesdays.
- 3 I don't know what to listen to.
- 4 Al passed without studying for the exam.
- 5 Kumi's listening to the radio.
- 6 Emma's house is by the park.
- 7 Their office is next to the library.
- 8 After finishing work, I go swimming.
- 9 Jon wants to study Spanish.
- 10 I live with Pete, Dan, and Ed.

## 105.3

- 1 My aunt is really good **at** making her own clothes.
- 2 My new house is **near** the National Museum.
- 3 In spite **of** the bad pay, Eleni loves her job.
- 4 You've been looking **at** that phone all morning.
- 5 Instead **of** going to college, I became a carpenter.

## 105.4

- 1 I'm not used to waking up so early each morning.
- 2 My son is planning to go to college in New York.
- 3 I'm sorry I haven't got around to replying to your email yet.
- 4 Jean-Pierre used to drive a red sports car.
- 5 Martin decided to quit his job at the library.
- 6 Virginie confessed to stealing the bottle of wine.

## 106

## 106.1

- 1 The dinner is **on** the table.
- 2 Julian lives **in** the United States.
- 3 Mesut wasn't **at** the party.
- 4 I went to meet Ula **at** the airport.
- 5 Carmen works **in** France.
- 6 I bought it **at** the supermarket.
- 7 Mary stayed **in** bed all morning.
- 8 There are 20 rooms **in** the building.
- 9 Put the toys back **in** their box.
- 10 We went to London **on** the train.
- 11 Marta left her keys **at** home.
- 12 Ben is sitting **on** the sofa.
- 13 The students are all **at** their desks.

## 106.2

- 1 Marina works at Z-Tech, the **software company on Park Street**.
- 2 You have some lovely **posters on your kitchen wall**.
- 3 My uncle Tony lives at **number 16, Nelson Avenue**.
- 4 We keep the lawnmower **in the shed behind the house**.
- 5 The college library can be found **on the ninth and tenth floors**.
- 6 I usually buy my bread **at the bakery across the road**.

## 106.3

- 1 The castle sits **in front of** some ugly modern buildings.
- 2 I placed the final box of books **on top of** the others.
- 3 Alan is working in the garage **under** a car.
- 4 Ian put his bag on the seat **opposite**.
- 5 There's a lovely park **near** the castle.
- 6 The library is **between** the bank and the café.
- 7 I found Craig and Robin hiding **behind** a tree.

## 107

## 107.1

- 1 Jan has a bath in the evening before she goes to bed.
- 2 During the week I wake up at 7am.
- 3 We'd better hurry. Our flight leaves in two hours.
- 4 It often gets far too hot in the summer in the city.
- 5 I'm free on Wednesday and Thursday this week.
- 6 I usually make coffee when I get up in the morning.

## 107.2

- 1 I'm meeting Eliana at 6pm.
- 2 Joe has his final exam on Friday.
- 3 She started work here in August.
- 4 I go to Angelo's café at lunchtime.
- 5 Pat works from home on Thursdays.
- 6 I always have a nap in the afternoon.
- 7 Their wedding is on August the 15th.
- 8 The performance starts at 4 o'clock.
- 9 Maria usually goes skiing in winter.
- 10 My daughter was born in 1996.

## 107.3

- 1 Americans celebrate **Independence Day on July 4**.
- 2 The best time to spot a **barn owl is at night**.
- 3 I often go walking in spring, **when the weather improves**.
- 4 I usually clean my apartment **on Sunday morning**.
- 5 Magda usually stays with **her family at Christmas**.

## 107.4

- 1 The store will be closed until the end of August.
- 2 Simon usually goes to bed at half past eleven.
- 3 The train leaves at quarter to seven.
- 4 What did you do during the summer break?

## 107.5

- 1 I usually go for lunch **between** 1 and 2pm.
- 2 I'm planning to work here **until** I retire.
- 3 Martin has worked here **since** October.
- 4 I lived in Spain for a couple of years **during** the 1970s.
- 5 Guests should leave their rooms **by** 11:30am.

## 107.6

- 1 The café is open **between** 8am and 6pm.
- 2 I'll be writing this essay **until** 10pm.
- 3 I've been working here **for** about five months.
- 4 We're traveling around Mexico from July **to** September.
- 5 Mabel's lived in Madrid **since** she was a child.
- 6 Camilla **has worked / has been working** here since July.



## 108

## 108.1

- 1 We went for a walk with our children **this** afternoon.
- 2 I get a lot of work done when I travel **by** train.
- 3 My aunt's written a book about the town where she grew up.

## 108.2

- 1 *Macbeth* was written **by** William Shakespeare in the early 1600s.
- 2 Takumi went to the theater **with** his wife last night.
- 3 We found our way to the castle **without** too much difficulty.
- 4 I ordered boiled potatoes **with** my steak.
- 5 Most tourists travel around Tokyo **by** metro.
- 6 We need to talk **about** employing some more staff.
- 7 Sarah managed to finish the project **without** any help.

## 108.3

- 1 We usually pay for **our** groceries **by** card.
- 2 Chris went to an interesting **lecture about** Madagascar.
- 3 We're looking for a house **with a view onto the sea**.
- 4 This wonderful piece of music **was composed by** Chopin.
- 5 We're going on vacation **to** Kenya **without our children**.
- 6 I took a photo of a fox **in my backyard with my phone**.

## 108.4

- 1 Julie always sings with such enthusiasm.
- 2 Pete's written a book about his childhood.
- 3 I decided to buy the laptop without thinking.
- 4 You can get fit by playing a sport.

## 109

## 109.1

- 1 There has been a big increase in people studying science.
- 2 You can always count on Dave to leave the place clean and tidy.
- 3 Andy sold his old car to one of his neighbors.

## 109.2

- 1 We haven't paid for the meal yet.
- 2 Emilia was angry about the dirty rooms in the hotel.
- 3 I'm waiting for a response to the email that I sent.

## 109.3

- 1 I was so proud **of** Katie when she passed the test.
- 2 There are lots of advantages **to** working from home.
- 3 This company is advertising **for** a new secretary.
- 4 Is everyone ready **for** the big exam tomorrow?
- 5 Stephanie has a very positive attitude **toward** her work.
- 6 The roadwork caused problems **for** many drivers.
- 7 I was so impressed **by** the room service.
- 8 My boss told us **to** be more punctual in future.
- 9 I don't agree **with** my husband about many things.
- 10 My son is afraid **of** spiders.
- 11 They've found another problem **with** my car.
- 12 Esther has talked **about** moving abroad for years.

## 109.4

- 1 I saw Leonard talking **to** a police officer yesterday.
- 2 There's been an increase **in** the number of thefts.
- 3 These animal toys should appeal **to** children.
- 4 Sangita is annoyed **with** her housemates.
- 5 My grandfather loves to talk **about** his childhood.

## 109.5

- 1 Ella is really upset **about** losing her mother's necklace.
- 2 Bill is anxious **about** giving a speech at the conference.
- 3 I have an excellent relationship **with** my manager.
- 4 My teacher asked me what I know **about** Roman history.
- 5 Erik has sold his bicycle **to** one of his cousins.
- 6 I've been having a lot of problems **with** my internet router.

## 110

## 110.1

- 1 There's a deli and a bookstore on Maple Road.
- 2 Would you like a first-class or standard-class ticket?
- 3 Pete's great with the customers, but he's very clumsy.

## 110.2

- 1 The movie was disappointing, **but the special effects were amazing**.
- 2 You can contact us by email **or by** telephone.
- 3 Bill's never traveled abroad, **nor does he plan to**.
- 4 My sister lives in Paris, **and my brother lives in Lyon**.

## 110.3

- 1 I've been to Ottawa, **but** I've never been to Vancouver.
- 2 It was raining, **so** we decided to go to the art gallery.
- 3 While walking, we saw an eagle, a puma, **and** a bear.
- 4 Ben has to choose between studying math, art, **or** psychology.
- 5 I did not like the food at the restaurant, **nor** did I like the decor.

## 110.4

- 1 Kim was feeling tired, so she went to bed.
- 2 My son doesn't live at home, nor does my daughter.
- 3 I was planning to go swimming, but I forgot my swimsuit.
- 4 Len's 76, yet he still plays soccer with his grandchildren.

## 111

## 111.1

- 1 The children ran out to play **as soon as it stopped raining**.
- 2 We bought Jim some binoculars **because he likes bird-watching**.
- 3 Adam failed his test, **even though he worked hard for it**.
- 4 Someone stole my purse **while I was at the restaurant**.
- 5 Sam usually eats **when he gets home from work**.

## 111.2

- 1 Eli decided to go jogging, **even though it** was raining.
- 2 Ella put on some sunscreen **so that** she didn't get sunburned.
- 3 **When I** finish this report, I'll give you a hand.
- 4 You need a passport **in order to** enter most countries.
- 5 **Even though** I prefer coffee, I decided to have a cup of tea.
- 6 Paolo decided to have a nap **because** he was feeling tired.
- 7 I made the dinner **while** my wife cleaned our apartment.

## 111.3

- 1 I read a newspaper **while** I was waiting for the train.
- 2 My dad bought some paint **so that** he can decorate the kitchen.
- 3 I'm not going out **until** I've finished my homework.
- 4 Sally's moving to Spain, **even though** she can't speak Spanish.
- 5 **When** you've written the report, can you send me a copy?

## 111.4

- 1 The concert **will begin** as soon as the singer **arrives**.
- 2 **Even though** I arrived early, there were no tickets left.
- 3 Miguela is learning to juggle **in order to** impress her friends.
- 4 Can you give me a call when **you arrive**?
- 5 I usually eat **when** my roommate gets home.
- 6 I went to the supermarket **to** buy some groceries.



## 112

## 112.1

- 1 Andy is tall, whereas his cousin is quite short.
- 2 I like visiting the mountains, especially in the winter.
- 3 Bill loves going fishing, just like his dad.

## 112.2

- 1 Selma has curly brown hair, **just as her grandmother did**.
- 2 Due to the bad snow, **all the trains this afternoon are delayed**.
- 3 As no one bought any tickets, **we've canceled tonight's show**.
- 4 Andy hated the movie, **though I thought it was okay**.
- 5 People in Japan drive on the left, **whereas we drive on the right here**.
- 6 We had to drive slowly **because of the icy conditions**.

## 112.3

- 1 Lianne loves football, **whereas** her brother hates it.
- 2 I was late for the interview **because of** the traffic.
- 3 The professor was sick. **As a result**, the lecture was postponed.
- 4 Frank is a zookeeper, **yet** he is terrified of mice.
- 5 I get on well with Saul, **so** we are going on vacation together.

## 112.4

- 1 Magda loves gardening, **especially** in the spring.
- 2 Omar visited Rome **because** he loves ancient history.
- 3 There are a lot of environmental problems **because of** the bad pollution.
- 4 **Thanks to** her music teacher, Selma became a great pianist.
- 5 I wanted to come this morning, **but** the tickets had sold out.

## 113

## 113.1

COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:  
**or, nor, so, and, but**  
SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:  
**after, because, although, in order that, even though**

## 113.2

- 1 time
- 2 reason
- 3 cause
- 4 time
- 5 reason
- 6 condition
- 7 condition

## 113.3

- 1 I have to send an email before I go home.
- 2 You can borrow my laptop as long as you look after it.
- 3 You can't go to the party unless you clean your room.

## 113.4

- 1 Leo screamed **when** he saw the spider in the bathroom.
- 2 Toby doesn't know what he'll do after **he leaves** school.
- 3 Emma put on her coat **because** she was feeling cold.
- 4 I was planning to go for a walk, **but** it started raining.
- 5 I'll call you as soon as **I know** any news.

## 114

## 114.1

- 1 I had a lot of fun with my coworkers at the office party.
- 2 I much prefer nonfiction, such as biographies, to fiction.
- 3 My girlfriend disapproves of me eating fast food.

## 114.2

- 1 The police are looking for a man in his **mid-twenties**.
- 2 I've **misplaced** my glasses. Have you seen them?
- 3 The actor's performance was **substandard**.
- 4 It was **irresponsible** to drive so quickly.
- 5 Clara is trying to **disprove** the allegations against her.
- 6 The teacher said their behavior was **unacceptable**.
- 7 The student's handwriting was quite **illegible**.

## 114.3

- 1 We found Alexandra's cakes totally **irresistible**.
- 2 I **misread** your name. I thought it said Davies, not Davis.
- 3 Les failed the exam, but he can **resit** next semester.
- 4 Andy was **dishonest** about being fluent in Portuguese.
- 5 Emily was struggling to **untie** her shoelaces.
- 6 It's **illegal** to drive without wearing a seatbelt.
- 7 This cake is really **undercooked**. It's almost raw inside.
- 8 Don't be so **impatient**. The train will come soon.

## 114.4

- 1 I realized I had the wrong key when I couldn't **unlock** the door.
- 2 Ed's so **unreliable**. He's always late.
- 3 You can **reapply** for the course next year.
- 4 Ola was **uncertain** what to think about Jim's haircut.
- 5 I think she **undercharged** us. It should have cost more.

## 115

## 115.1

- 1 This wooden box should be **really useful for storing our documents**.
- 2 Karl's dog looks dangerous, **but it's actually quite harmless**.
- 3 Our accountant has been **accused of** incompetence.
- 4 The evening's entertainment **included some wonderful music**.
- 5 My brother's a pessimist **and thinks things will deteriorate**.

## 115.2

ADJECTIVES:

-able/-ible, -al/-ial, -ful, -ic/-tic/-ical, -less, -ous

VERBS:

-ate, -en, -ize, -ify

NOUNS:

-ance/-ence, -dom, -er/-or, -ism, -ist/-ian, -ity/-ty

## 115.3

- 1 Alan works for a **management** recruitment company.
- 2 The café serves a selection of **seasonal** vegetables.
- 3 The fish are **plentiful** in local rivers.
- 4 Kids love taking **inflatable** toys to the beach.
- 5 I found the music festival very **enjoyable**.
- 6 She always shows great **commitment** to her students.

## 115.4

- 1 We want to express our appreciation for all your work.
- 2 The new couch is really comfortable.
- 3 Unemployment is a real problem in my city.

## 116

## 116.1

- 1 It's difficult getting used to the city **after living in the countryside**.
- 2 I'm getting my hair cut this **afternoon at the salon across the road**.
- 3 Bill got used to the weather **in Australia surprisingly quickly**.
- 4 Sian's getting new **windows fitted in her apartment**.
- 5 Gill's still not used to driving **on the left in Britain**.
- 6 We have our house painted **about every 10 years**.

## 116.2

- 1 It took me a while to get used to the cold water in the lake.
- 2 Joel is used to the cold. He grew up in Finland.
- 3 You can get your car washed at the gas station.

## 116.3

- 1 I hated working nights at first, but then I got used to it.
- 2 Olga grew up in Moscow, so she's used to cold winters.
- 3 I used to work as a lab technician before I became a teacher.
- 4 Nico has his hair cut at the barbershop on Main Street.
- 5 I got my locks changed after our place was broken into.

## 116.4

- 1 Sheila always gets a pizza delivered on Fridays.
- 2 I'm not used to living in a rainy country.
- 3 I have my teeth cleaned by the hygienist once a month.

## 117

## 117.1

- 1 for instance
- 2 moreover
- 3 then
- 4 to begin with

## 117.2

- 1 Then I switch on the **oven and find my ingredients**.
- 2 Next, I put all the ingredients **in a bowl and mix them together**.
- 3 After that, I pour the mixture **into a baking pan**.
- 4 You can add extra ingredients, **such as nuts or dried fruit**.
- 5 Finally, I put the cake into **the oven for about 25 minutes**.

## 117.3

- 1 Furthermore, you should choose the type of house you want.
- 2 For example, do you want to live in an apartment or a house?
- 3 Does the property have, for instance, a balcony?
- 4 In conclusion, you should think carefully before buying a house.

## 117.4

- 1 **Additionally**, they provide employment to many people in the region.
- 2 **Furthermore**, many species are in danger of extinction.
- 3 **Meanwhile**, the logging companies continue to destroy vast areas.
- 4 **In conclusion**, forests are in need of urgent protection.

## 118

## 118.1

- 1 Really? I find him quite dull.
- 2 I didn't think it suited her, actually.
- 3 I'm afraid I disagree. I don't like them.
- 4 I don't agree. I think it looks great.
- 5 I thought it was predictable, to be honest.

## 118.2

- 1 To be honest, I much prefer the city.
- 2 I don't agree. It was incredibly boring.
- 3 I'm afraid I disagree. I think it's really overcrowded.

## 118.3

- 1 Anyway, she's still a really good writer.
- 2 I'm afraid I don't think she is.
- 3 As I was saying, I think she is very talented.
- 4 I don't think I agree with you, actually.
- 5 By the way, have you ever read her first novel?
- 6 You have a point about her books costing too much.
- 7 Actually, I thought the main character was awful.
- 8 I see your point about the main character.
- 9 I told you I wouldn't like Claudia's new novel!

## 119

## 119.1

- 1 It seems my car has broken down again.
- 2 It would appear that the cat has knocked over the vase.
- 3 I don't like modern art. However, I don't mind this picture.

## 119.2

- 1 Although the restaurant is **nearby, I rarely eat there**.
- 2 However, whenever I go there, **I always have a good time**.
- 3 Of course, all the dishes **are made using the finest ingredients**.
- 4 On the one hand, it's very expensive, **but on the other hand, it's good quality**.
- 5 I might go out tonight. **Alternatively, I could relax in front of the TV**.
- 6 Despite feeling tired, **I decided to go out with my friends**.

## 119.3

- 1 It seems you haven't completed all the paperwork.
- 2 She could potentially be a really good actor.
- 3 It appears that someone forgot to lock up the office.
- 4 To a certain extent, we believe Manuel is right.

## 119.4

- 1 The figures suggest that we are losing a lot of customers.
- 2 Despite the delays, I enjoyed myself thoroughly.
- 3 On the one hand, I'm rich. On the other hand, I'm not very happy.
- 4 To some extent, crime has increased in the past year.

## 120

## 120.1

- 1 You know, that's a great idea.
- 2 Sort of. I can hold a basic conversation.
- 3 Well, I do have plans later.
- 4 Let's see... I could probably make you 100.
- 5 Wow! That's amazing.

## 120.2

- 1 Let's see... I've been working **in IT for more than 10 years**.
- 2 Well, I enjoy working with **my team on large projects**.
- 3 So, I think we can all agree **that the project is a success**.

## 120.3

- 1 Really? What are you going to do there?
- 2 Well, I'd like to work as a waiter.
- 3 You know, that might be hard work.
- 4 I suppose so, but I will practice my French.
- 5 Of course. But do you speak any French?
- 6 Good question. Not yet, but I'd like to.
- 7 Oh right. What else do you want to do?
- 8 Let's see. I'd like to travel around France.
- 9 Wow! That sounds like a great idea.